



---

**DF-650(B)**  
**BF-1(B)**  
**MT-1(B)**  
**PH-4A/4C**

**SERVICE  
MANUAL**

Published in December 2008  
843ML110  
3MLSM060  
First Edition

## **CAUTION**

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

## **ATTENTION**

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACÉE PAR UN MODÈLE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISÉES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNÉES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

**Revision history**

<b>Revision</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Replaced pages</b>	<b>Remarks</b>

This page is intentionally left blank.

---

# Safety precautions

---

This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

## Safety warnings and precautions

Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

 **DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

### Symbols

The triangle () symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



General warning.



Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

 indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

 indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.



Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.



Always ground the copier.

# 1. Installation Precautions

## WARNING

- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. .... 
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. .... 

## CAUTION:

- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. .... 
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. .... 
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material.  
  
This may cause fire. .... 
- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. .... 
- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. .... 
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. .... 
- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. .... 
- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. .... 

## 2.Precautions for Maintenance

### WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. .... 
  - Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. .... 
  - Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. .... 
  - Always use parts having the correct specifications. .... 
  - Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. .... 
  - When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. .... 
  - Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. .... 
  - Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. .... 
  - Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. .... 
  - Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. .... 
- ### CAUTION
- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. .... 
  - Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. .... 
  - Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. .... 
  - Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. .... 

• Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. ....



• Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. ....



• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item. ....



• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks. ....



• Remove toner completely from electronic components. ....



• Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged. ....



• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws. ....



• Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary. ....



• Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below: ....



· Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.

· Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.

· Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.

· Always wash hands afterwards.

• Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc. ....



• Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately. ....



### 3.Miscellaneous

#### WARNING

• Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas. ....



This page is intentionally left blank.

# CONTENTS

<b>1-1 Specifications</b>	
1-1-1 Specifications .....	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names .....	1-1-2
1-1-3 Machine cross sectional view .....	1-1-3
<b>1-2 Installation</b>	
1-2-1 Installation environment .....	1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking .....	1-2-2
(1) Unpacking .....	1-2-2
(2) Removing tapes and spacers.....	1-2-3
<b>1-3 Maintenance Mode</b>	
1-3-1 Maintenance mode .....	1-3-1
(1) Executing a maintenance item .....	1-3-1
(2) Contents of the maintenance mode items.....	1-3-2
<b>1-4 Troubleshooting</b>	
1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection .....	1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication .....	1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions .....	1-4-2
(3) Paper misfeeds .....	1-4-3
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis .....	1-4-6
(1) Self-diagnostic function .....	1-4-6
(2) Self diagnostic codes .....	1-4-6
1-4-3 Electric problems .....	1-4-14
1-4-4 Mechanical problems .....	1-4-22
<b>1-5 Assembly and Disassembly</b>	
1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly .....	1-5-1
(1) Precautions .....	1-5-1
1-5-2 Finisher .....	1-5-2
(1) Correcting paper curling .....	1-5-2
(2) Correcting centerfold-stapling .....	1-5-4
(3) Adjusting the stapler unit mounting position.....	1-5-5
(4) Centering stapling position .....	1-5-8
1-5-3 Centerfold unit.....	1-5-10
(1) Detaching and refitting the centerfold blade.....	1-5-10
(2) Adjusting the paper folding position .....	1-5-12
1-5-4 Punch unit .....	1-5-13
(1) Centering punch-holes .....	1-5-13
(2) Setting margin from the leading edge to punch holes.....	1-5-14
<b>1-6 Requirements on PWB Replacement</b>	
1-6-1 Upgrading the version of the firmware of the finisher main PWB .....	1-6-1
1-6-2 Requirements on finisher main PWB replacement .....	1-6-2
<b>2-1 Mechanical construction</b>	
2-1-1 Finisher .....	2-1-1
(1) Paper insertion section .....	2-1-1
(2) Feedshift section .....	2-1-2
(3) Intermediate tray section.....	2-1-5
(4) Paper eject section .....	2-1-13
2-1-2 Multi job tray.....	2-1-15
2-1-3 Centerfold unit.....	2-1-17
2-1-4 Punch unit .....	2-1-20

## 2-2 Electrical Parts Layout

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout.....	2-2-1
(1) PWBs (finisher) .....	2-2-1
(2) Switches and sensors (finisher) .....	2-2-2
(3) Clutches and solenoids (finisher) .....	2-2-4
(4) Motors and others (finisher) .....	2-2-5
(5) Stapler .....	2-2-6
(6) PWBs (optional centerfold unit).....	2-2-7
(7) Switches and sensors (optional centerfold unit).....	2-2-8
(8) Motors and solenoids (optional centerfold unit).....	2-2-9
(9) Switches and motors (optional multi job tray).....	2-2-10
(10) Switches and motors (optional punch unit) .....	2-2-11

## 2-3 Operation of the PWBs

2-3-1 Finisher main PWB .....	2-3-1
2-3-2 Finisher drive PWB .....	2-3-10
2-3-3 Centerfold unit main PWB.....	2-3-13

## 2-4 Appendixes

Maintenance parts list .....	2-4-1
Periodic maintenance procedures .....	2-4-3
Centerfold unit wiring diagram .....	2-4-7
General wiring diagram No.1 .....	2-4-8
General wiring diagram No.2 .....	2-4-9
General wiring diagram No.3 .....	2-4-10
General wiring diagram No.4 .....	2-4-11
General wiring diagram No.5 .....	2-4-12
General wiring diagram No.6 .....	2-4-13
General wiring diagram No.7 .....	2-4-14

## INSTALLATION GUIDE

- CENTERFOLD UNIT
- MULTI JOB TRAY
- PUNCH UNIT
- STOPPER GUIDE

## 1-1-1 Specifications

### Finisher

Type .....	Floor type
Number of trays .....	2 trays
Tray capacity .....	Main tray (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> weight paper) A3, B4, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14" (Legal): 1500 sheets A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Folio, 8 1/2" x 11" (Letter), 11" x 8 1/2", 5 1/2" x 8 1/2": 3000 sheets Sub tray (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> weight paper) A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Folio, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14" (Legal), 8 1/2" x 11" (Letter), 11" x 8 1/2", 5 1/2" x 8 1/2": 200 sheets
Stapling capacity .....	A3, B4, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14" (Legal): 30 sheets A4, A4R, B5, 8 1/2" x 11" (Letter), 11" x 8 1/2": 50 sheets
Storage capacity .....	A3, B4, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14" (Legal) Stapling 2 - 4 sheets: 150 sets Stapling 5 - 10 sheets: 100 sets Stapling 11 - 30 sheets: 50 sets A4, A4R, B5, 8 1/2" x 11" (Letter), 11" x 8 1/2" Stapling 2 - 4 sheets: 150 sets Stapling 5 - 10 sheets: 100 sets Stapling 11 - 30 sheets: 50 sets Stapling 31 - 50 sheets: 3000 sheets
Power source .....	Supplied via machine
Dimensions (W x D x H) .....	796 x 640 x 1070 mm 31 5/16" x 25 3/16" x 42 1/8"
Weight .....	75 kg or less/165.3 lbs. or less

### Centerfold unit (option)

Sizes .....	A3, B4, A4R, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 11" (Letter)
Number of sheets .....	1 - 16 (no stapling for 1 sheet)
Maximum number for storage .....	5 or less copies in a set: 30 sets 6 - 10 copies in a set: 20 sets 11 - 16 copies in a set: 10 sets
Paper weight .....	60 - 200 g/m <sup>2</sup> (only one cover for 81 g/m <sup>2</sup> or more)

### Multi job tray (option)

Number of trays .....	Job tray: 5
Paper size .....	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, B6R, Folio, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14" (Legal), 8 1/2" x 11" (Letter), 11" x 8 1/2", 5 1/2" x 8 1/2"
Tray capacity .....	A3, B4, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14": 100 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> weight paper) A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, B6R, Folio, 8 1/2" x 11" (Letter), 11" x 8 1/2", 5 1/2" x 8 1/2": 150 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> weight paper)
Dimensions (W x D x H) .....	368 x 392 x 573 mm 14 1/2" x 15 7/16" x 22 9/16"
Weight .....	Approx. 15 kg/33 lbs.

### Punch unit (option)

Paper size .....	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Folio, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14" (Legal), 8 1/2" x 11" (Letter), 11" x 8 1/2", 5 1/2" x 8 1/2"
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

1-1-2 Parts names

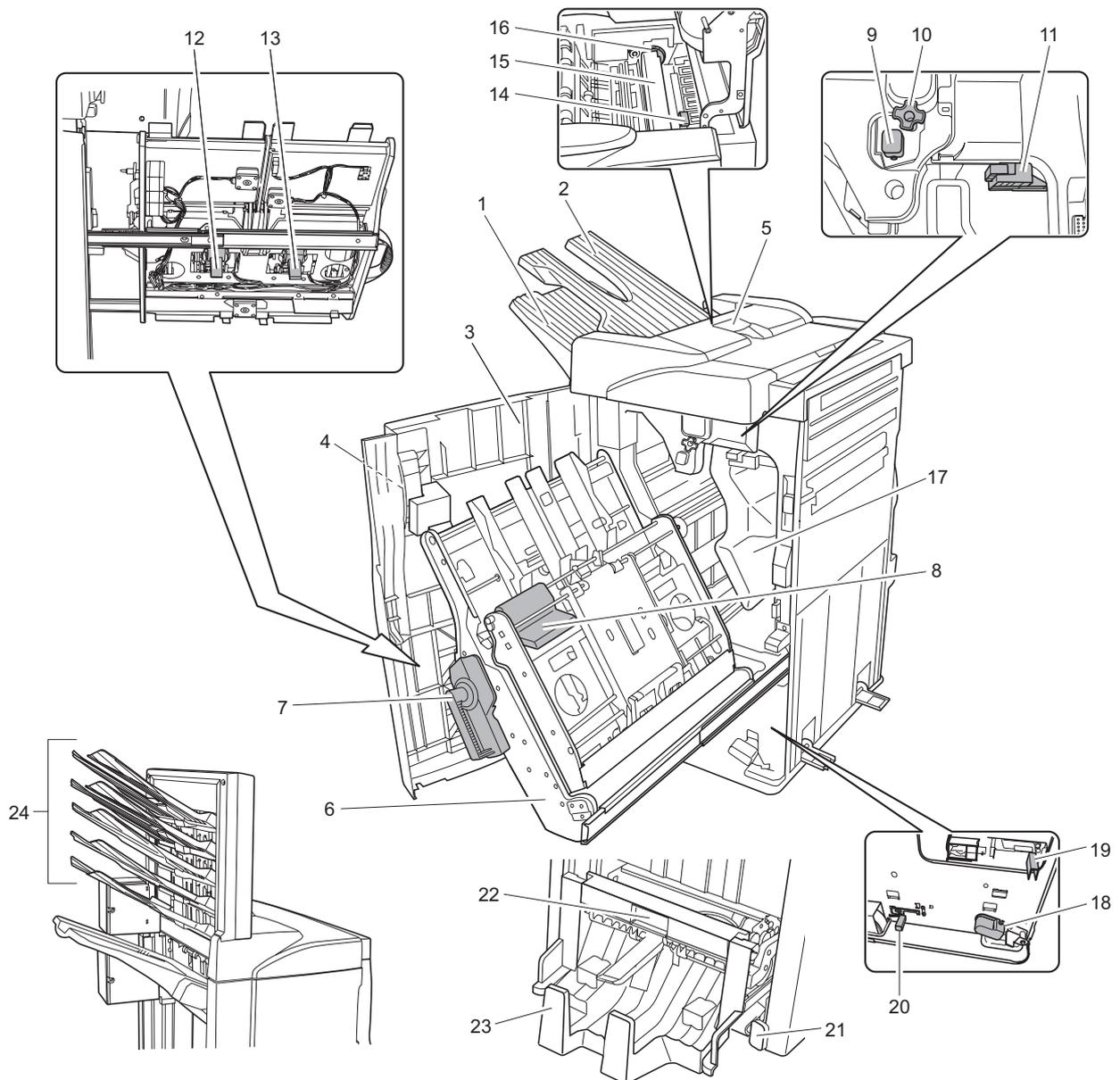


Figure 1-1-1

**Finisher**

- 1. Main tray (Tray A)
- 2. Sub tray (Tray B)
- 3. Front cover
- 4. Front cover handle
- 5. Upper cover
- 6. Intermediate tray
- 7. Intermediate tray lever
- 8. Intermediate tray release lever
- 9. Pressure roller adjuster
- 10. Conveyor knob
- 11. Coupling section's lower guide lever
- 12. Stapler cartridge A
- 13. Stapler cartridge B
- 14. Coupling section's upper guide lever

**Punch unit (option)**

- 15. Punch unit
- 16. Punch unit adjustment dial
- 17. Punch waste box

**Centerfold unit (option)**

- 18. Unit release lever
- 19. Unit release handle
- 20. Centerfold unit lock release lever
- 21. Centerfold unit installation button
- 22. Conveyor guide lever
- 23. Storage tray

**Multi job tray (option)**

- 24. Job trays 1 - 5

## 1-1-3 Machine cross sectional view

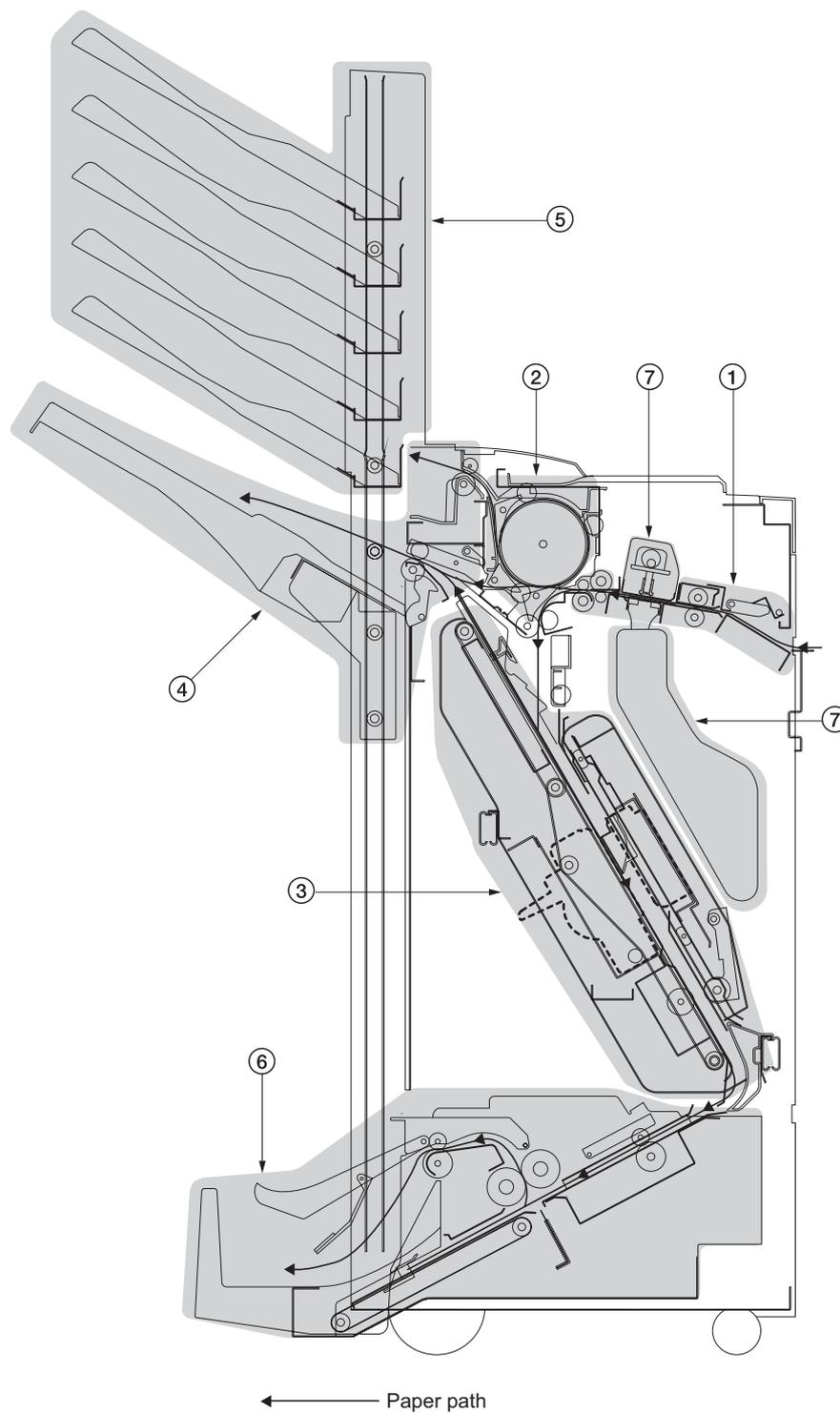


Figure 1-1-2

1. Paper insertion section
2. Feedshift section
3. Intermediate tray section
4. Paper ejection section
5. Multi job tray (option)
6. Centerfold unit (option)
7. Punch unit (option)

This page is intentionally left blank.

### 1-2-1 Installation environment

#### **Installation location (Be based on the machine establishment place.)**

Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photo-conductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.

Avoid extremes of temperature and humidity, abrupt ambient temperature changes, and hot or cold air directed onto the machine.

Avoid dust and vibration.

Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.

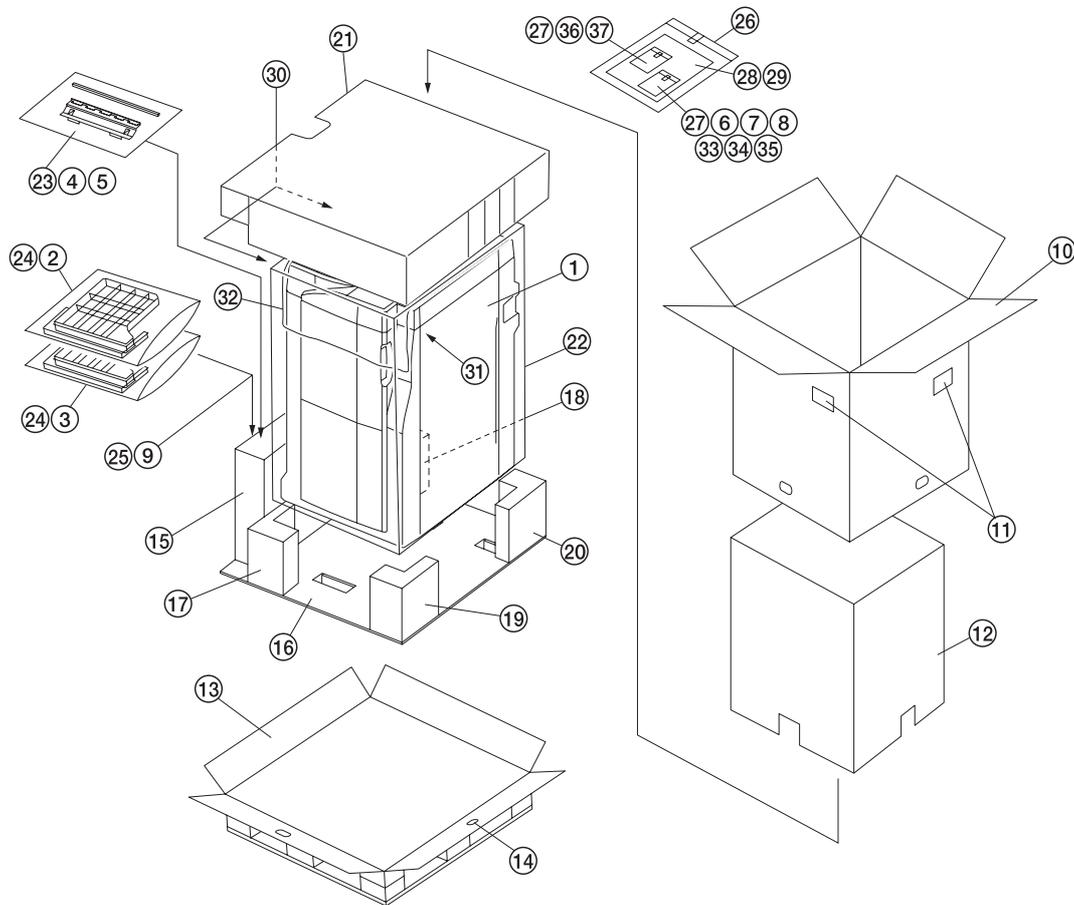
Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).

Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photo-conductor, such as mercury, acidic or alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NO<sub>x</sub>, SO<sub>x</sub> gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.

Select a room with good ventilation.

## 1-2-2 Unpacking

### (1) Unpacking



**Figure 1-2-1 Unpacking (Finisher)**

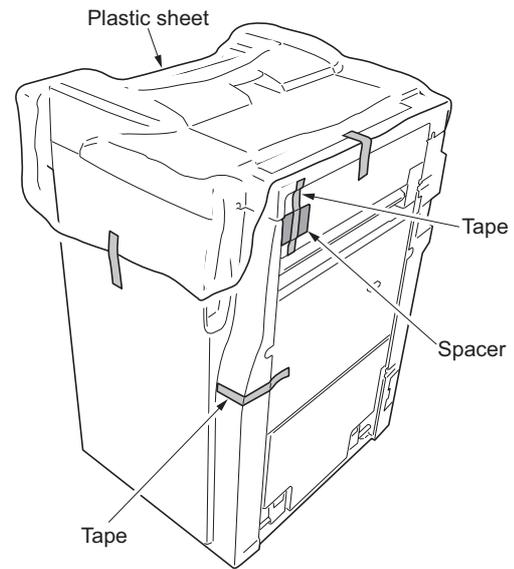
- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Finisher                      | 20. Rear lower right pad       |
| 2. Main tray                     | 21. Upper pad                  |
| 3. Sub tray                      | 22. Machine cover              |
| 4. Connecting plate              | 23. Air cap bag                |
| 5. Sponge                        | 24. Air cap bag                |
| 6. Pins                          | 25. Air cap bag                |
| 7. Nuts                          | 26. Plastic bag                |
| 8. M4 x 20 TP tap tight S screws | 27. Plastic bag                |
| 9. Stapler cartridges            | 28. Operation guide            |
| 10. Outer case                   | 29. Installation guide         |
| 11. Barcode labels               | 30. Spacer                     |
| 12. Inner frame                  | 31. Spacer                     |
| 13. Skid                         | 32. Plastic sheet              |
| 14. Hinge joint                  | 33. Clamp                      |
| 15. Accessory case               | 34. M3 x 14 tap tight S screws |
| 16. Bottom cushion sheet         | 35. M4 x 8 tap tight S screws  |
| 17. Front lower left pad         | 36. Grounding plates A         |
| 18. Rear lower left pad          | 37. Grounding plates B         |
| 19. Front lower right pad        |                                |

**Caution:** Place the machine on a level surface. See the Installation Guide for installation.

**(2) Removing tapes and spacers**

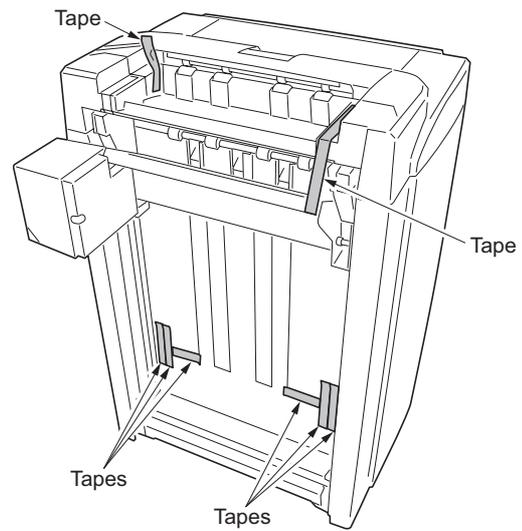
**Procedure**

1. Remove the plastic sheet.
2. Remove two tapes and spacer.



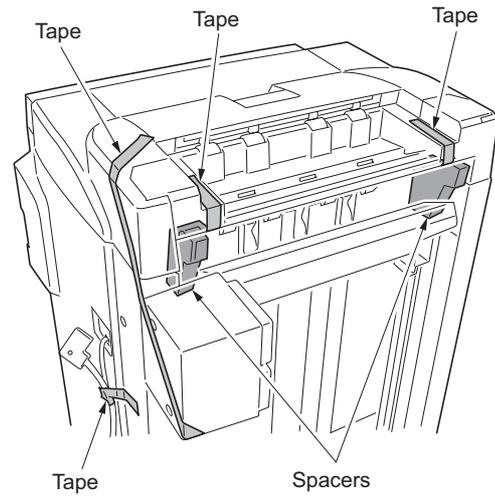
**Figure 1-2-2**

3. Remove eight tapes.



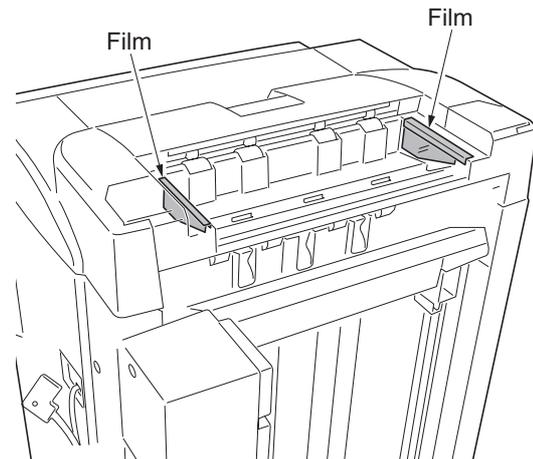
**Figure 1-2-3**

4. Remove four tapes and two spacers.



**Figure 1-2-4**

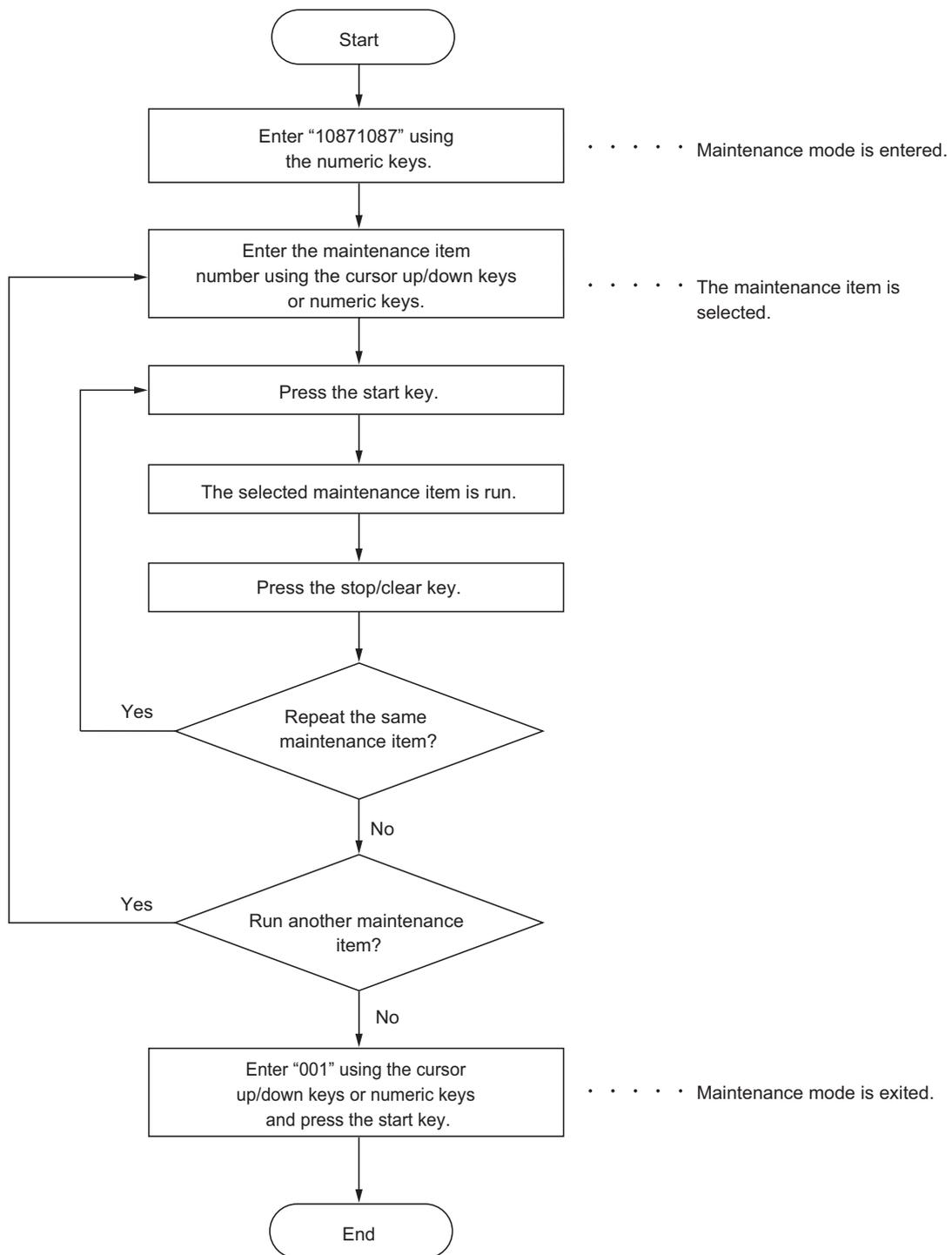
Remove two films after fitting the sub tray  
(see the Installation Guide).



**Figure 1-2-5**

### 1-3-1 Maintenance mode

#### (1) Executing a maintenance item



(2) Contents of the maintenance mode items

Maintenance item No.	Description																																		
<b>U018</b>	<p><b>Displaying the ROM checksum</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Displays the checksum of ROM.  <b>Purpose</b>                      To check the checksum.  <b>Method</b>                      Press the start key. The ROM checksum is displayed.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td> <td>Main PWB ROM checksum</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ENGINE</td> <td>Engine PWB ROM checksum</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SCANNER</td> <td>Scanner PWB ROM checksum</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE(Stand.)</td> <td>Standard language ROM checksum</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE(Optional)</td> <td>Optional language ROM checksum</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DP</td> <td>DP main PWB ROM checksum</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td> <td>Document finisher ROM checksum</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main PWB ROM checksum	ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM checksum	SCANNER	Scanner PWB ROM checksum	LANGUAGE(Stand.)	Standard language ROM checksum	LANGUAGE(Optional)	Optional language ROM checksum	DP	DP main PWB ROM checksum	FINISHER	Document finisher ROM checksum																		
Display	Description																																		
MAIN	Main PWB ROM checksum																																		
ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM checksum																																		
SCANNER	Scanner PWB ROM checksum																																		
LANGUAGE(Stand.)	Standard language ROM checksum																																		
LANGUAGE(Optional)	Optional language ROM checksum																																		
DP	DP main PWB ROM checksum																																		
FINISHER	Document finisher ROM checksum																																		
<b>U019</b>	<p><b>Displaying the ROM version</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Displays the part number for the ROM fitted to each PWB.  <b>Purpose</b>                      To check the part number or to decide, based on the last digit of the number, if the newest version of ROM is installed.  <b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The ROM version (the last 6 digits of the part number) is displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the * or # keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td> <td>Main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ENGINE</td> <td>Engine PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SCANNER</td> <td>Scanner PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE (Stand.)</td> <td>Standard language ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE(Optional)</td> <td>Optional language ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAIN BOOT</td> <td>Main PWB booting</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PRINTER</td> <td>Optional printer board booting</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NETWORK SCANNER</td> <td>Optional network scanner ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DP</td> <td>DP ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td> <td>Document finisher main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ENGINE BOOT</td> <td>Engine PWB booting</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER BOOT</td> <td>Document finisher main PWB booting</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE1</td> <td>Deck PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE2</td> <td>Cassette PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td> <td>Duplex PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SIDE FEEDER</td> <td>Optional side feeder main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main PWB ROM IC	ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM IC	SCANNER	Scanner PWB ROM IC	LANGUAGE (Stand.)	Standard language ROM IC	LANGUAGE(Optional)	Optional language ROM IC	MAIN BOOT	Main PWB booting	PRINTER	Optional printer board booting	NETWORK SCANNER	Optional network scanner ROM IC	DP	DP ROM IC	FINISHER	Document finisher main PWB ROM IC	ENGINE BOOT	Engine PWB booting	FINISHER BOOT	Document finisher main PWB booting	CASSETTE1	Deck PWB ROM IC	CASSETTE2	Cassette PWB ROM IC	DUPLEX	Duplex PWB ROM IC	SIDE FEEDER	Optional side feeder main PWB ROM IC
Display	Description																																		
MAIN	Main PWB ROM IC																																		
ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM IC																																		
SCANNER	Scanner PWB ROM IC																																		
LANGUAGE (Stand.)	Standard language ROM IC																																		
LANGUAGE(Optional)	Optional language ROM IC																																		
MAIN BOOT	Main PWB booting																																		
PRINTER	Optional printer board booting																																		
NETWORK SCANNER	Optional network scanner ROM IC																																		
DP	DP ROM IC																																		
FINISHER	Document finisher main PWB ROM IC																																		
ENGINE BOOT	Engine PWB booting																																		
FINISHER BOOT	Document finisher main PWB booting																																		
CASSETTE1	Deck PWB ROM IC																																		
CASSETTE2	Cassette PWB ROM IC																																		
DUPLEX	Duplex PWB ROM IC																																		
SIDE FEEDER	Optional side feeder main PWB ROM IC																																		

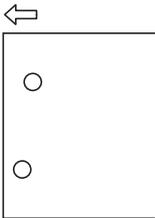
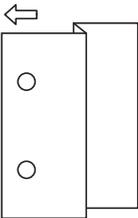
Maintenance item No.	Description												
U234	<p><b>Setting punch destination</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the destination of optional punch unit of document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set when installing the optional punch unit.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the destination.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NOTHING</td> <td>Automatic recognition</td> </tr> <tr> <td>JAPAN METRIC</td> <td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INCH</td> <td>Inch (North America) specifications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td> <td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SWEDEN METRIC</td> <td>Metric (North Europe) specifications</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: NOTHING</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	NOTHING	Automatic recognition	JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	SWEDEN METRIC	Metric (North Europe) specifications
Display	Description												
NOTHING	Automatic recognition												
JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications												
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications												
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications												
SWEDEN METRIC	Metric (North Europe) specifications												
U235	<p><b>Setting output tray initialize mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether or not initialization (shift of eject position to main tray) is performed when auto clear is triggered if a multi-job tray is installed to an optional finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set as required according to the user.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>HP ON</td> <td>Job tray initialization is performed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HP OFF</td> <td>Job tray initialization is not performed.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: HP ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	HP ON	Job tray initialization is performed.	HP OFF	Job tray initialization is not performed.						
Display	Description												
HP ON	Job tray initialization is performed.												
HP OFF	Job tray initialization is not performed.												

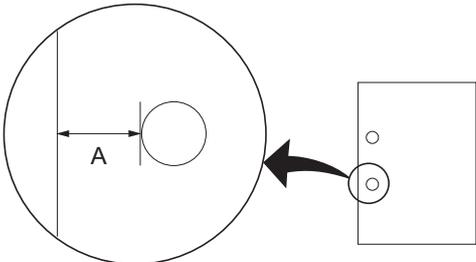
Maintenance item No.	Description						
<p><b>U237</b></p>	<p><b>Adjusting finisher stack quantity</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the number of sheets of stack on the main tray in the document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Setting</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Stack quantity: 3000 sheets</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Stack quantity: 1500 sheets</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0 If the preset value is changed to 1, the number of sheets of a stack is limited to 1,500 in modes other than the staple mode.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Setting	Description	0	Stack quantity: 3000 sheets	1	Stack quantity: 1500 sheets
Setting	Description						
0	Stack quantity: 3000 sheets						
1	Stack quantity: 1500 sheets						

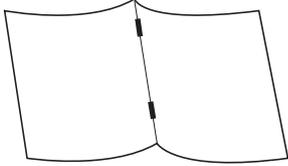
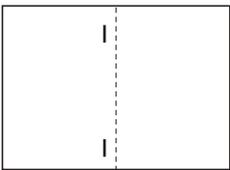
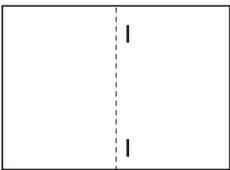
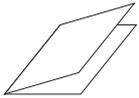
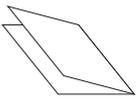
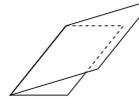
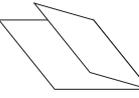
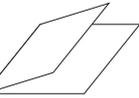
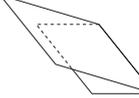
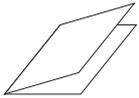
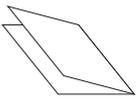
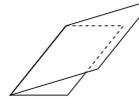
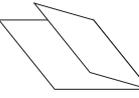
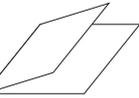
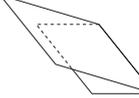
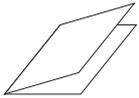
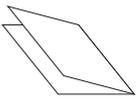
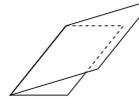
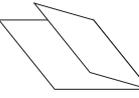
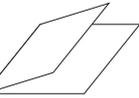
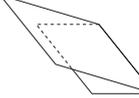
Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																				
U240	<p><b>Checking the operation of the finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns each motor and solenoid of the document finisher ON.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each motor and solenoid of the document finisher.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be checked.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td> <td>Motors and solenoids of document finisher</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE</td> <td>Motors and solenoids of centerfold unit</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Checking the motor and solenoid of the document finisher</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select FINISHER on the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be operated.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motors and solenoids</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FD_IN_MT_H</td> <td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on high speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FD_IN_MT_M</td> <td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on middle speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FD_IN_MT_L</td> <td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on low speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CNV_MT_H</td> <td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on high speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CNV_MT_M</td> <td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on middle speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CNV_MT_L</td> <td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on low speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>UP_MT</td> <td>Upper paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-U) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DOWN_MT</td> <td>Lower paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-L) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LGR_TEST</td> <td>Front/rear upper side registration guide motor (SRGM-FU/RU) test operation for 11" x 17" size</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A3_TEST</td> <td>Front/rear upper side registration guide motor (SRGM-FU/RU) test operation for A3 size</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WDTH_MT_L</td> <td>Lower side registration guide motor (SRGM-L) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SLAP_MT_INI</td> <td>Movable guide motor (MGM) is turned on initial driving</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SLAP_MT_MOV</td> <td>Movable guide motor (MGM) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DRM_MT_H</td> <td>Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned high speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DRM_MT_M</td> <td>Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned middle speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DRM_MT_L</td> <td>Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned low speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJECT_MT_H</td> <td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on high speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJECT_MT_M</td> <td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on middle speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJECT_MT_L</td> <td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on low speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MTRAY_MT</td> <td>Main tray elevation motor (MTEM) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>JTRAY_MT</td> <td>Multi job tray elevation motor (MJTEM) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOL_A</td> <td>Feedshift solenoid A (FSSOLA) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOL_B</td> <td>Feedshift solenoid B (FSSOLB) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOL_C</td> <td>Feedshift solenoid C (FSSOLC) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COLO_SOL</td> <td>Paper forwarding pulley solenoid (PFPSOL) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LOCK_SOL</td> <td>Lock solenoid (LSOL) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P_PUT_SOL</td> <td>Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJECT_SOL</td> <td>Eject guide solenoid (EGSOL) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH_MT</td> <td>Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH_SOL</td> <td>Punch solenoid (PUNSOL) is turned on</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	FINISHER	Motors and solenoids of document finisher	SADDLE	Motors and solenoids of centerfold unit	Display	Motors and solenoids	FD_IN_MT_H	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on high speed	FD_IN_MT_M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on middle speed	FD_IN_MT_L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on low speed	CNV_MT_H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on high speed	CNV_MT_M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on middle speed	CNV_MT_L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on low speed	UP_MT	Upper paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-U) is turned on	DOWN_MT	Lower paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-L) is turned on	LGR_TEST	Front/rear upper side registration guide motor (SRGM-FU/RU) test operation for 11" x 17" size	A3_TEST	Front/rear upper side registration guide motor (SRGM-FU/RU) test operation for A3 size	WDTH_MT_L	Lower side registration guide motor (SRGM-L) is turned on	SLAP_MT_INI	Movable guide motor (MGM) is turned on initial driving	SLAP_MT_MOV	Movable guide motor (MGM) is turned on	DRM_MT_H	Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned high speed	DRM_MT_M	Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned middle speed	DRM_MT_L	Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned low speed	EJECT_MT_H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on high speed	EJECT_MT_M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on middle speed	EJECT_MT_L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on low speed	MTRAY_MT	Main tray elevation motor (MTEM) is turned on	JTRAY_MT	Multi job tray elevation motor (MJTEM) is turned on	SOL_A	Feedshift solenoid A (FSSOLA) is turned on	SOL_B	Feedshift solenoid B (FSSOLB) is turned on	SOL_C	Feedshift solenoid C (FSSOLC) is turned on	COLO_SOL	Paper forwarding pulley solenoid (PFPSOL) is turned on	LOCK_SOL	Lock solenoid (LSOL) is turned on	P_PUT_SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL) is turned on	EJECT_SOL	Eject guide solenoid (EGSOL) is turned on	PUNCH_MT	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on	PUNCH_SOL	Punch solenoid (PUNSOL) is turned on
Display	Description																																																																				
FINISHER	Motors and solenoids of document finisher																																																																				
SADDLE	Motors and solenoids of centerfold unit																																																																				
Display	Motors and solenoids																																																																				
FD_IN_MT_H	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on high speed																																																																				
FD_IN_MT_M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on middle speed																																																																				
FD_IN_MT_L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on low speed																																																																				
CNV_MT_H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on high speed																																																																				
CNV_MT_M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on middle speed																																																																				
CNV_MT_L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on low speed																																																																				
UP_MT	Upper paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-U) is turned on																																																																				
DOWN_MT	Lower paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-L) is turned on																																																																				
LGR_TEST	Front/rear upper side registration guide motor (SRGM-FU/RU) test operation for 11" x 17" size																																																																				
A3_TEST	Front/rear upper side registration guide motor (SRGM-FU/RU) test operation for A3 size																																																																				
WDTH_MT_L	Lower side registration guide motor (SRGM-L) is turned on																																																																				
SLAP_MT_INI	Movable guide motor (MGM) is turned on initial driving																																																																				
SLAP_MT_MOV	Movable guide motor (MGM) is turned on																																																																				
DRM_MT_H	Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned high speed																																																																				
DRM_MT_M	Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned middle speed																																																																				
DRM_MT_L	Siding drum motor (SDM) is turned low speed																																																																				
EJECT_MT_H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on high speed																																																																				
EJECT_MT_M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on middle speed																																																																				
EJECT_MT_L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on low speed																																																																				
MTRAY_MT	Main tray elevation motor (MTEM) is turned on																																																																				
JTRAY_MT	Multi job tray elevation motor (MJTEM) is turned on																																																																				
SOL_A	Feedshift solenoid A (FSSOLA) is turned on																																																																				
SOL_B	Feedshift solenoid B (FSSOLB) is turned on																																																																				
SOL_C	Feedshift solenoid C (FSSOLC) is turned on																																																																				
COLO_SOL	Paper forwarding pulley solenoid (PFPSOL) is turned on																																																																				
LOCK_SOL	Lock solenoid (LSOL) is turned on																																																																				
P_PUT_SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL) is turned on																																																																				
EJECT_SOL	Eject guide solenoid (EGSOL) is turned on																																																																				
PUNCH_MT	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on																																																																				
PUNCH_SOL	Punch solenoid (PUNSOL) is turned on																																																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																																		
<p><b>U240</b></p>	<p>3. To turn ON a solenoid with the motor driving, press the interrupt key before selecting the solenoid. The driving motor will start operation, and the selected clutch or the solenoid will remain ON until the interrupt key is pressed again.</p> <p>4. To stop motor driving, press the interrupt key again.</p> <p>5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key with the motor stopped.</p> <p><b>Method: Checking the motor and solenoid of the centerfold unit</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select SADDLE on the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be operated.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motors and solenoids</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SDL_MT_H</td> <td>Main motor (MM) is turned ON high speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SDL_MT_L</td> <td>Main motor (MM) is turned ON low speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SDL_BLD_MT</td> <td>Centerfold blade motor (CBLM) is turned ON</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SDL_CTR_MT</td> <td>Centering plate motor (CPM) is turned ON</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SDL_WIDTH_MT</td> <td>Side registration guide motor (SRGM) is turned ON</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SDL_SOL</td> <td>Pressure release solenoid (PRSOL) is turned ON</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>3. To turn ON a solenoid with the motor driving, press the interrupt key before selecting the solenoid. The driving motor will start operation, and the selected clutch or the solenoid will remain ON until the interrupt key is pressed again.</p> <p>4. To stop motor driving, press the interrupt key again.</p> <p>5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key with the motor stopped.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key with the operation stopped. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motors and solenoids	SDL_MT_H	Main motor (MM) is turned ON high speed	SDL_MT_L	Main motor (MM) is turned ON low speed	SDL_BLD_MT	Centerfold blade motor (CBLM) is turned ON	SDL_CTR_MT	Centering plate motor (CPM) is turned ON	SDL_WIDTH_MT	Side registration guide motor (SRGM) is turned ON	SDL_SOL	Pressure release solenoid (PRSOL) is turned ON																				
Display	Motors and solenoids																																		
SDL_MT_H	Main motor (MM) is turned ON high speed																																		
SDL_MT_L	Main motor (MM) is turned ON low speed																																		
SDL_BLD_MT	Centerfold blade motor (CBLM) is turned ON																																		
SDL_CTR_MT	Centering plate motor (CPM) is turned ON																																		
SDL_WIDTH_MT	Side registration guide motor (SRGM) is turned ON																																		
SDL_SOL	Pressure release solenoid (PRSOL) is turned ON																																		
<p><b>U241</b></p>	<p><b>Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the status of each switch of the document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each switch of the document finisher.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</li> <li>2. Turn each switch ON manually. When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.</li> <li>3. Change the screen using the * or # keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Switches</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FD_IN_SW</td> <td>Paper entry sensor (PES)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJT_SW</td> <td>Paper ejection sensor (PEJS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DRM_SW</td> <td>Sub tray paper ejection sensor (STPES)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M_TRAY_FD_SW</td> <td>Intermediate tray paper conveying sensor (ITPCS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P_DET_U_SW</td> <td>Upper paper conveying belt home position sensor (PCBHPS-U)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P_DET_D_SW</td> <td>Lower paper conveying belt home position sensor (PCBHPS-L)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PCH_BOX_SW</td> <td>Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SLAP_HP_SW</td> <td>Movable guide home position sensor (MGHPS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P_PUT_SW</td> <td>Paper holder detection sensor (PHDS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STP_FPIN_SW</td> <td>Front stapler empty sensor (STES-F)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STP_RPIN_SW</td> <td>Rear stapler empty sensor (STES-R)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STP_F_CT_SW</td> <td>Front stapler cartridge sensor (STCS-F)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STP_R_CT_SW</td> <td>Rear stapler cartridge sensor (STCS-R)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STP_F_HP_SW</td> <td>Front stapler home position sensor (STHPS-F)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STP_R_HP_SW</td> <td>Rear stapler home position sensor (STHPS-R)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CRT_F_HP_SW</td> <td>Front clincher home position sensor (CLNHPS-F)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Switches	FD_IN_SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)	EJT_SW	Paper ejection sensor (PEJS)	DRM_SW	Sub tray paper ejection sensor (STPES)	M_TRAY_FD_SW	Intermediate tray paper conveying sensor (ITPCS)	P_DET_U_SW	Upper paper conveying belt home position sensor (PCBHPS-U)	P_DET_D_SW	Lower paper conveying belt home position sensor (PCBHPS-L)	PCH_BOX_SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)	SLAP_HP_SW	Movable guide home position sensor (MGHPS)	P_PUT_SW	Paper holder detection sensor (PHDS)	STP_FPIN_SW	Front stapler empty sensor (STES-F)	STP_RPIN_SW	Rear stapler empty sensor (STES-R)	STP_F_CT_SW	Front stapler cartridge sensor (STCS-F)	STP_R_CT_SW	Rear stapler cartridge sensor (STCS-R)	STP_F_HP_SW	Front stapler home position sensor (STHPS-F)	STP_R_HP_SW	Rear stapler home position sensor (STHPS-R)	CRT_F_HP_SW	Front clincher home position sensor (CLNHPS-F)
Display	Switches																																		
FD_IN_SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)																																		
EJT_SW	Paper ejection sensor (PEJS)																																		
DRM_SW	Sub tray paper ejection sensor (STPES)																																		
M_TRAY_FD_SW	Intermediate tray paper conveying sensor (ITPCS)																																		
P_DET_U_SW	Upper paper conveying belt home position sensor (PCBHPS-U)																																		
P_DET_D_SW	Lower paper conveying belt home position sensor (PCBHPS-L)																																		
PCH_BOX_SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)																																		
SLAP_HP_SW	Movable guide home position sensor (MGHPS)																																		
P_PUT_SW	Paper holder detection sensor (PHDS)																																		
STP_FPIN_SW	Front stapler empty sensor (STES-F)																																		
STP_RPIN_SW	Rear stapler empty sensor (STES-R)																																		
STP_F_CT_SW	Front stapler cartridge sensor (STCS-F)																																		
STP_R_CT_SW	Rear stapler cartridge sensor (STCS-R)																																		
STP_F_HP_SW	Front stapler home position sensor (STHPS-F)																																		
STP_R_HP_SW	Rear stapler home position sensor (STHPS-R)																																		
CRT_F_HP_SW	Front clincher home position sensor (CLNHPS-F)																																		

Maintenance item No.	Description	
<b>U241</b>	<b>Display</b>	<b>Switches</b>
	CRT_R_HP_SW	Rear clincher home position sensor (CLNHPS-R)
	T_OPEN_SW	Upper cover switch (UCSW)
	F_OPEN_SW	Front cover switch (FCSW)
	JTRAY_DT_SW	Multi job tray position sensor (MJTPS)
	JTRAY_P_SW1	Paper detection switch 1 (PDSW1)
	JTRAY_P_SW2	Paper detection switch 2 (PDSW2)
	JTRAY_P_SW3	Paper detection switch 3 (PDSW3)
	JTRAY_P_SW4	Paper detection switch 4 (PDSW4)
	JTRAY_P_SW5	Paper detection switch 5 (PDSW5)
	JTRAY_UL_T_SW	Multi job tray upper limit detection sensor (MJTULDS)
	JTRAY_P_SW	Multi job tray front/rear switches (MJTSW-F/MJTSW-R)
	JTRAY_U_SW	Multi job tray paper upper surface detection light emitting/intercepting sensors (MJTPUSDLES/MJTPUSDLIS)
	MTRAY_U_SW	Main tray paper upper surface detection light emitting/intercepting sensors (MTPUSDLES/MTPUSDLIS)
	MTRAY_LM_SW	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)
	1000_SW	Main tray load 1000 detection sensor (MTLDS-10)
	1500_SW	Main tray load 1500 detection sensor (MTLDS-15)
	JTRAY_LLT_SW	Multi job tray lower limit detection sensor (MJTLLDS)
	3000_SW	Main tray load 3000 detection sensors (MTLDS-30)
	MTRAY_LLT_SW	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)
	N_STP_HP_SW	-
	N_STP_CT_SW	-
	W_UF_HP_SW	Front upper side registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS-FU)
	W_UR_HP_SW	Rear upper side registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS-RU)
	W_L_HP_SW	Lower side registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS-L)
	UP_HP_SW	Upper paper sensor (PS-U)
	DWN_HP_SW	Lower paper sensor (PS-L)
	SDL_SET_SW	Centerfold unit set switch (CUSW)
	SDL_DET_SW	Eject tray detection switch (ETDSW)
	SDL_W_HP_SW	Side Registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS)
	SDL_S_HP_SW	Centering plate home position sensor (CPHPS)
	SDL_B_HP_SW	Centerfold blade home position sensor (CBLHPS)
SDL_FD_SW	Centerfold unit paper entry sensor (CUPES)	
SDL_P_SW	Eject tray paper detection switch (ETPDSW)	
SDL_E_SW	Folded edge detection sensor (FEDS)	
SDL_T_SW	Inside tray detection sensor (ITDS)	
<b>Completion</b>	Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.	

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U248	<p><b>Setting the paper ejection device</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the paper stop timing in the punch mode, the booklet stapling position, and the center folding position for the machine with the document finisher installed. Also, displays and clears the punch-hole scrap count.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Adjustment or registration stop timing in punch mode Adjust if skewed paper conveying occurs or if the copy paper is Z-folded in punch mode. Adjustment of paper stop timing in the punch mode To adjust this item when the position of a punch hole is different from the specified one. Punch-hole scrap count display (clearing) Used to manually clear the punch-hole scrap count if a message requiring collection of punch-hole scrap is shown on the touch panel after collection. Adjustment of booklet stapling position Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper. Adjustment of center folding position Adjusts the center folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper. Setting the punch limit Sets the maximum number of punches possible in order to be informed of the timing for disposing of waste punch. Decrease the value when using thick paper frequently.</p> <p><b>Start</b> Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PUNCH REGIST ADJUST</td> <td>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH POSITION ADJUST</td> <td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH COUNT</td> <td>Punch-hole scrap count display</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST</td> <td>Booklet stapling position adjustment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE ADJUST</td> <td>Adjustment of center folding position</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH PRESET</td> <td>Punch limit</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting the registration stop timing in punch mode</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select PUNCH REGIST ADJUST on the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</td> <td>-5 to 5</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Sample 1</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Sample 2</p> </div> </div> <p>If skewed paper conveying occurs (sample 1), increase the preset value. If the copy paper is Z-folded (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	PUNCH REGIST ADJUST	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode	PUNCH POSITION ADJUST	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode	PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count display	SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST	Booklet stapling position adjustment	SADDLE ADJUST	Adjustment of center folding position	PUNCH PRESET	Punch limit	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode	-5 to 5	0
Display	Description																				
PUNCH REGIST ADJUST	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode																				
PUNCH POSITION ADJUST	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode																				
PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count display																				
SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST	Booklet stapling position adjustment																				
SADDLE ADJUST	Adjustment of center folding position																				
PUNCH PRESET	Punch limit																				
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																			
Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode	-5 to 5	0																			

Maintenance item No.	Description																																		
U248	<p><b>Setting the paper stop timing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select PUNCH POSITION ADJUST on the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>2. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.24 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>  <p>Preset value A: 5.5±2mm (inch) 9.5±2mm (metric)</p> <p>If the distance of the position of a punch hole is smaller than the specified value A, increase the preset value. If the distance is larger than the value A, decrease the preset value. Changing the value by 1 changes by 1.0 mm.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Displaying the punch-hole scrap count</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select PUNCH COUNT on the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>2. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys. Press the reset key to clear the count.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)</td> <td>0 to 9999999</td> <td>-</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting the booklet stapling position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST on the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>2. Select the size to be set.</li> <li>3. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A4R/8.5 x 11</td> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4R/8.5 x 11 size</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.55 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B4R/8.5 x 14</td> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4R/8.5 x 14 size</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.55 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A3R/11 x 17</td> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3R/11 x 17 size</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.55 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If the staple position is displaced toward the ejection side (copy sample 1), decrease the preset value. If the staple position is displaced toward the feeding side (copy sample 2), increase the preset value.</p>	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 9999999	-	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	A4R/8.5 x 11	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4R/8.5 x 11 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	B4R/8.5 x 14	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4R/8.5 x 14 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	A3R/11 x 17	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3R/11 x 17 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																																
Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																																
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																	
Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 9999999	-																																	
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																															
A4R/8.5 x 11	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4R/8.5 x 11 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																															
B4R/8.5 x 14	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4R/8.5 x 14 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																															
A3R/11 x 17	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3R/11 x 17 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																															

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
<p><b>U248</b></p>	<div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Copy sample 1</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Copy sample 2</p> </div> </div> <p>4. Press the start key. The value is set.                      5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</p> <p><b>Setting the center folding position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select SADDLE ADJUST on the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>2. Select the size to be set.</li> <li>3. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A4R/8.5 x 11</td> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4R/8.5 x 11 size</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.55 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B4R/8.5 x 14</td> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4R/8.5 x 14 size</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.55 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A3R/11 x 17</td> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3R/11 x 17 size</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.55 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Left stapling</th> <th>Right stapling</th> <th>Adjustment method</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"></td> <td style="text-align: center;"></td> <td style="text-align: center;">Proper</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"> Upper side is longer.</td> <td style="text-align: center;"> Lower side is longer.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Increase the preset value.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"> Lower side is longer.</td> <td style="text-align: center;"> Upper side is longer.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Decrease the preset value.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>4. Press the start key. The value is set.                      5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value	A4R/8.5 x 11	Adjustment of center folding position for A4R/8.5 x 11 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	B4R/8.5 x 14	Adjustment of center folding position for B4R/8.5 x 14 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	A3R/11 x 17	Adjustment of center folding position for A3R/11 x 17 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Left stapling	Right stapling	Adjustment method			Proper	 Upper side is longer.	 Lower side is longer.	Increase the preset value.	 Lower side is longer.	 Upper side is longer.	Decrease the preset value.
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value																													
A4R/8.5 x 11	Adjustment of center folding position for A4R/8.5 x 11 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																													
B4R/8.5 x 14	Adjustment of center folding position for B4R/8.5 x 14 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																													
A3R/11 x 17	Adjustment of center folding position for A3R/11 x 17 size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																													
Left stapling	Right stapling	Adjustment method																															
		Proper																															
 Upper side is longer.	 Lower side is longer.	Increase the preset value.																															
 Lower side is longer.	 Upper side is longer.	Decrease the preset value.																															

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U248	<p><b>Setting the punch limit</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select PUNCH PRESET on the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>2. Change the value using the * or # keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Punch limit (max. number of punches)</td> <td>0 to 999000</td> <td>100000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The punch limit can be set to any value in increments of 1000.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Punch limit (max. number of punches)	0 to 999000	100000
Description	Setting range	Initial setting					
Punch limit (max. number of punches)	0 to 999000	100000					
U330	<p><b>Setting the number of sheets to enter stacking mode during sort operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the number of copies at which copy ejection will be switched from the optional document finisher's sub tray to its main tray when sorting is turned ON in the setting for the output mode under user simulation.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set as required according to the number of copies the user makes.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current setting is displayed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. Initial setting: 201 (sheets)</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
<p><b>U905</b></p>	<p><b>Checking/clearing counts by optional devices</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays or clears the counts of the DP or optional finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the use of the DP and optional finisher. Also to clear the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</li> <li>2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked. The count of the selected device is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>DP</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td> <td>Number of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td> <td>Number of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Finisher</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td> <td>Number of copies that has passed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td> <td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH</td> <td>Frequency the punch has been activated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STACK</td> <td>Frequency the stacker has been activated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE</td> <td>Frequency the center holding has been activated</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be cleared. The selected item is displayed in reverse. Select the counts for all, press the reset key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ADP	Number of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP	RADP	Number of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP	Display	Description	CP CNT	Number of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated	PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated	STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated	SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated
Display	Description																		
ADP	Number of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP																		
RADP	Number of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP																		
Display	Description																		
CP CNT	Number of copies that has passed																		
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																		
PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated																		
STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated																		
SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated																		

## 1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

### (1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper jam occurs, the machine immediately stops copying and the operation panel shows a paper misfeed message.

Paper jam counts sorted by the detecting conditions can be checked by maintenance item U903.

To remove paper, open the front cover or upper cover.

To reset the paper misfeed detection, open and close the front cover or upper cover to turn the front cover switch or upper cover switch off and on, respectively.

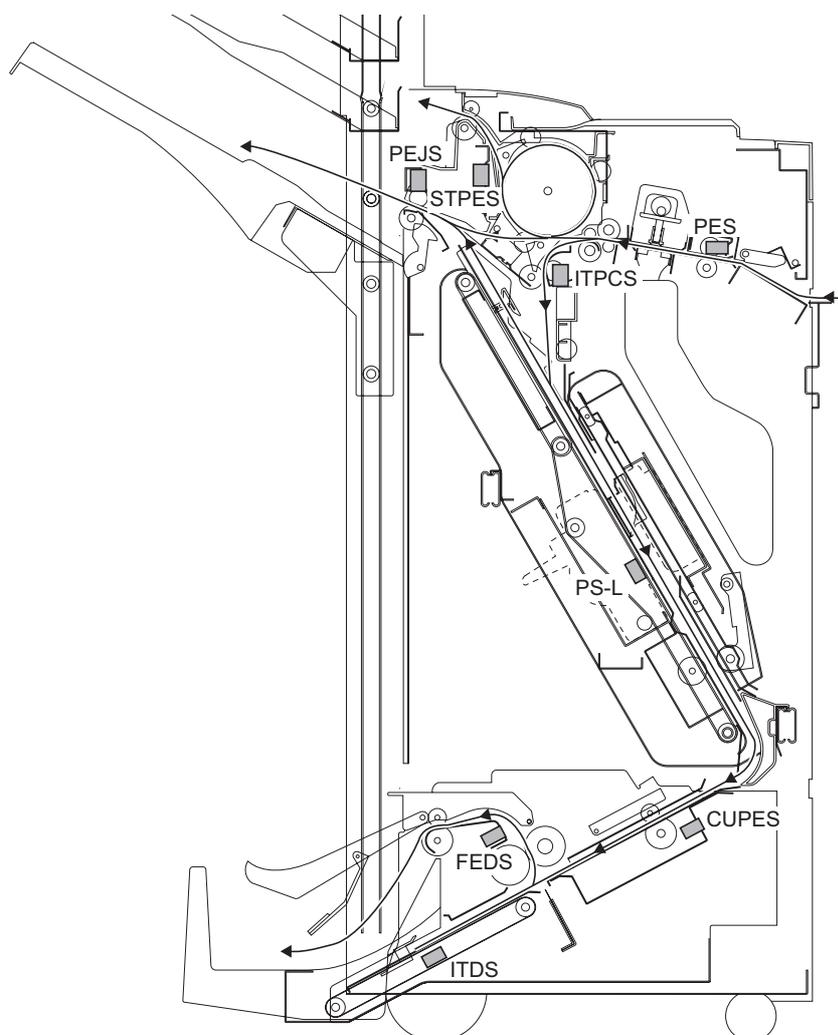


Figure 1-4-1

**(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions**

Section	Jam code	Description	Conditions
Document finisher	80	Jam between the finisher and copier	Paper ejection is not output from the copier to the document finisher within 15 s of the face-up exit sensor (FUES) turning off.
	81	Paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher	When the paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn on within 1950 ms of the face-up exit sensor (FUES) of the copier turning off.
	82	Paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher and paper ejection to the sub tray	When the sub tray paper ejection sensor (STPES) does not turn on within 2000 ms of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.
			When the paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn off within 1500 ms of its turning on.
	83	Paper jam at the siding drum	When the sub tray paper ejection sensor (STPES) does not turn off within 1000 ms of its turning on.
	84	Paper jam during paper insertion to the intermediate tray	When the intermediate tray paper conveying sensor (ITPCS) does not turn on within 1200 ms of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.
			When the paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn off within 1500 ms of its turning on.
			When the intermediate tray paper conveying sensor (ITPCS) does not turn on within 2000 ms of the sub tray paper ejection sensor (STPES) turning on.
	85	Paper jam during ejection of stack of paper	When the intermediate tray paper conveying sensor (ITPCS) does not turn off within 1000 ms of its turning on.
	86	Jam in eject section of main tray	When straight ejection is performed, the paper ejection sensor (PEJS) is not turned on even if 2600 ms elapse after the paper entry sensor (PES) is turned on.
	87	Jam in eject section (middle tray) of main tray	The paper ejection sensor (PEJS) is not turned on even if 2600 ms elapse after bundled ejection from the intermediate tray starts.
	88	Jam in eject section of main tray	When the paper ejection sensor (PEJS) does not turn off within 2600 ms of its turning on.
	89	Jam in cover open	During operation, any of safety switches (upper cover switch (UCSW), front cover switch (FCSW), and centerfold unit set switch (CUSSW) is turned off.
	90	Jam in stapler	The front/rear stapler home position sensor (STHPS-F/R) or front/rear clincher home position sensor (CLNHPS-F/R) cannot detect normally the home position.
	91	Jam in saddle paper entry section	The lower paper sensor (PS-L) is not turned on even if 3000 ms elapse after bundled ejection to the centerfold unit starts.
	92	Jam in saddle paper entry section	The centerfold unit paper entry sensor (CUPES) is not turned on even if 2000 ms elapse after sorter ejection notification (serial communication data from the finisher main body to the centerfold unit).
93	Jam in saddle tray section	When the inside tray detection sensor (ITDS) does not turn on within 5000 ms of the centerfold unit paper entry sensor (CUPES) turning on.	
94	Jam in saddle eject section	The folded edge detection sensor (FEDS) is not turned on even if 5000 ms elapse after centerfold operation starts.	
95	Jam in saddle eject section	When the folded edge detection sensor (FEDS) does not turn off within 6000 ms of its turning on.	

**(3) Paper misfeeds**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(1) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher). Jam code 81	The paper entry roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The paper entry roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the paper entry sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(2) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher and paper ejection to the sub tray). Jam code 82	The sub feed roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The sub feed roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the paper entry sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective sub tray paper ejection sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the sub tray paper ejection sensor on and off manually. Replace the sub tray paper ejection sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(3) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam at the siding drum). Jam code 83	The siding drum is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The siding drum is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective sub tray paper ejection sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the sub tray paper ejection sensor on and off manually. Replace the sub tray paper ejection sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(4) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the intermediate tray). Jam code 84	The intermediate tray paper entry roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The intermediate tray paper entry roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective intermediate tray paper conveying sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the intermediate tray paper conveying sensor on and off manually. Replace the intermediate tray paper conveying sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(5) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during ejection of stack of paper). Jam code 85	The intermediate tray paper entry roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The intermediate tray paper entry roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective intermediate tray paper conveying sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the intermediate tray paper conveying sensor on and off manually. Replace the intermediate tray paper conveying sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(6) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in eject section of main tray). Jam code 86	The eject roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The eject roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective paper eject sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper eject sensor on and off manually. Replace the paper eject sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(7) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in eject section (middle tray) of main tray). Jam code 87	The eject roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The eject roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective paper eject sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper eject sensor on and off manually. Replace the paper eject sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(8) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in eject section of main tray). Jam code 88	The eject roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The eject roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective paper eject sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper eject sensor on and off manually. Replace the paper eject sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(9) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in cover open). Jam code 89	Defective upper cover switch.	If the voltage at CN3-3 on the finisher main PWB remains the same when the upper cover switch is turned on and off, replace the switch.
	Defective front cover switch.	If the voltage at CN3-4 on the finisher main PWB remains the same when the front cover switch is turned on and off, replace the switch.
	Defective centerfold unit set switch.	If the voltage at CN14-2 on the finisher main PWB remains the same when the centerfold unit set switch is turned on and off, replace the switch.
(10) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in stapler). Jam code 90	Defective front/rear stapler home position sensor.	If the voltage at CN6-14B and CN6-10B on the finisher main PWB remain the same when the front/rear stapler home position sensor is turned on and off, replace the front/rear stapler driver.
	Defective front/rear clincher home position sensor.	If the voltage at CN6-22A and CN6-23A on the finisher main PWB remain the same when the front/rear clincher home position sensor is turned on and off, replace the front/rear stapler clincher.
(11) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in saddle paper entry section). Jam code 91	The intermediate tray upper or lower sliding plate is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective lower paper sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the lower paper sensor on and off manually. Replace the lower paper sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(12) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in saddle paper entry section). Jam code 92	The paper forwarding pulley, upper or lower forwarding roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The paper forwarding pulley, upper or lower forwarding roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective centerfold unit paper entry sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the centerfold unit paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the centerfold unit paper entry sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(13) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in saddle tray section). Jam code 93	The paper entry roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The paper entry roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective inside tray detection sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the inside tray detection sensor on and off manually. Replace the inside tray detection sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(14) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in saddle eject section). Jam code 94	The right or left centerfold roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The right or left centerfold roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective folded edge detection sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the folded edge detection sensor on and off manually. Replace the folded edge detection sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(15) A paper jam in the document finisher is indicated during copying (jam in saddle eject section). Jam code 95	The eject roller is dirty with paper powder.	Check and, if it is dirty, clean it.
	The eject roller is deformed or worn.	Check and, if it is deformed or worn, fix or replace it.
	Defective folded edge detection sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the folded edge detection sensor on and off manually. Replace the folded edge detection sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

## 1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

### (1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of C followed by a number, indicating the nature of the problem. A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning front cover/upper cover switch off and back on.

### (2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C8000</b>	<b>Finisher type mismatch problem</b> • Absence of the finisher is detected.	Different type of the finisher is installed.	Install the correct finisher.
<b>C8010</b>	<b>Document finisher paper conveying motor problem</b> • The LOCK signal of the paper conveying motor is detected for more than 500 ms while the paper conveying motor is operating. However, the first 1 s after the paper conveying motor is turned on is excluded from detection.	Loose connection of the paper conveying motor connector.	Check the connection of connector YC14 on the finisher main PWB. Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective paper conveying motor.	Replace the paper conveying motor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8020</b>	<b>Document finisher punch motor problem</b> • The LOCK signal of the punch motor is detected for more than 500 ms while the punch motor is operating. However, the first 1 s after the punch motor is turned on is excluded from detection.	Loose connection of the punch motor connector.	Check the connection of connector YC13 on the finisher main PWB and YC1 on the punch PWB. Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective punch motor.	Replace the punch motor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8030	<b>Document finisher upper paper conveying belt problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the intermediate tray upper sliding plate is not detected in the home position within 3 s after the belt returns to the home position. JAM87 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem reoccurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the upper paper conveying belt.</li> <li>When the intermediate tray upper sliding plate is operated from the home position, the upper paper conveying belt home position sensor does not turn off within 1 s.</li> </ul>	Phase shift of the upper paper conveying belt.	Correct the phase of the upper paper conveying belt and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the upper paper conveying belt motor.	Replace the upper paper conveying belt motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the upper paper conveying belt home position sensor.	Replace the upper paper conveying belt home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the upper paper conveying belt home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Incorrect insertion of the intermediate tray.	Check whether the intermediate tray catches are damaged.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8040	<b>Document finisher lower paper conveying belt problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the intermediate tray lower sliding plate is not detected in the home position within 3 s after the belt returns to the home position. JAM87 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem reoccurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the lower paper conveying belt.</li> <li>When the intermediate tray lower sliding plate is operated from the home position, the lower paper conveying belt home position sensor does not turn off within 1 s.</li> </ul>	Phase shift of the lower paper conveying belt.	Correct the phase of the lower paper conveying belt and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the lower paper conveying belt motor.	Replace the lower paper conveying belt motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the lower paper conveying belt home position sensor.	Replace the lower paper conveying belt home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the lower paper conveying belt home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Incorrect insertion of the intermediate tray.	Check whether the intermediate tray catches are damaged.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C8140</b>	<b>Document finisher main tray problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the main tray is not detected by the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray load detection sensor within 20 s from the moment it starts ascending.</li> <li>During main tray descent, the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray load detection sensor does not turn off within 500 ms after it turns on.</li> <li>During main tray ascent, the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray load detection sensor stays on for more than 2 s.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the main tray elevation motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfuction of the main tray elevation motor.	Replace the main tray elevation motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfuction of the main tray upper limit detection sensor.	Replace the main tray upper limit detection sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the main tray upper limit detection sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfuction of the main tray load detection sensor.	Replace the main tray load detection sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the main tray load detection sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8150</b>	<b>Document finisher multi job tray problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the multi job tray is not detected by the multi job tray upper limit detection sensor within 20 s from the moment it starts ascending.</li> <li>During multi job tray descent, the multi job tray upper limit detection sensor does not turn off within 500 ms after it turns on.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the multi job tray elevation motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfuction of the multi job tray elevation motor.	Replace the multi job tray elevation motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfuction of the multi job tray upper limit detection sensor.	Replace the multi job tray upper limit detection sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the multi job tray upper limit detection sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8170	<p><b>Document finisher front upper side registration guide problem</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the front upper side registration guide is not detected in the home position within 3 s after the guide returns to the home position. JAM87 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem occurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the front upper side registration guide.</li> <li>When the front upper side registration guide is operated from the home position, the front upper side registration home position sensor does not turn off within 500 ms.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the front upper side registration guide motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the front upper side registration guide motor.	Replace the front upper side registration guide motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the front upper side registration guide home position sensor.	Replace the front upper side registration guide home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the front upper side registration guide home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8180	<p><b>Document finisher rear upper side registration guide problem</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the rear upper side registration guide is not detected in the home position within 3 s after the guide returns to the home position. JAM87 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem occurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the rear upper side registration guide.</li> <li>When the rear upper side registration guide is operated from the home position, the rear upper side registration home position sensor does not turn off within 500 ms.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the rear upper side registration guide motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the rear upper side registration guide motor.	Replace the rear upper side registration guide motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the rear upper side registration guide home position sensor.	Replace the rear upper side registration guide home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the rear upper side registration guide home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8190	<b>Document finisher lower side registration guide problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the front/rear lower side registration guides are not detected in the home position within 3 s after the guide returns to the home position. JAM87 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem occurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the lower side registration guide.</li> <li>When the lower side registration guide is operated from the home position, the lower side registration home position sensor does not turn off within 500 ms.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the lower side registration guide motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the lower side registration guide motor.	Replace the lower side registration guide motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the lower side registration guide home position sensor.	Replace the lower side registration guide home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the lower side registration guide home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8210	<b>Document finisher front stapler problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the front stapler is not detected in the home position within 500 ms after the front stapler returns to the home position. JAM90 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem occurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the front stapler.</li> <li>When the front stapler is operated from the home position, the front stapler home position sensor does not turn off within 500 ms.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the front stapler motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the front stapler motor.	Replace the front stapler motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the front stapler home position sensor.	Replace the front stapler home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the front stapler home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8220	<b>Document finisher front clincher problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the front clincher is not detected in the home position within 500 ms after the front clincher returns to the home position. JAM90 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem occurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the front clincher.</li> <li>When the front clincher is operated from the home position, the front clincher home position sensor does not turn off within 500 ms.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the front clincher motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the front clincher motor.	Replace the front clincher motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the front clincher home position sensor.	Replace the front clincher home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the front clincher home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8230	<b>Document finisher rear stapler problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the rear stapler is not detected in the home position within 500 ms after the rear stapler returns to the home position. JAM90 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem occurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the rear stapler.</li> <li>When the rear stapler is operated from the home position, the rear stapler home position sensor does not turn off within 500 ms.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the rear stapler motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the rear stapler motor.	Replace the rear stapler motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the rear stapler home position sensor.	Replace the rear stapler home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the rear stapler home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8240	<b>Document finisher rear clincher problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the rear clincher is not detected in the home position within 500 ms after the rear clincher returns to the home position. JAM90 is indicated the first time this problem occurs. If the problem occurs after initialization when the front cover is opened and closed, the problem is in the rear clincher.</li> <li>When the rear clincher is operated from the home position, the rear clincher home position sensor does not turn off within 500 ms.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the rear clincher motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the rear clincher motor.	Replace the rear clincher motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the rear clincher home position sensor.	Replace the rear clincher home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the rear clincher home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8300	<b>Document finisher centerfold unit communication problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Communication with the centerfold unit is not possible although the connection is detected.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the centerfold unit set switch connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective centerfold unit set switch.	Replace the centerfold unit set switch and check for correct operation.
		Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Replace the centerfold unit main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8310	<b>Document finisher centerfold unit side registration guide problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the front/rear side registration guides are not detected in the home position within 600 ms after the guide returns to the home position.</li> <li>When the side registration guide is operated from the home position, the side registration guide home position sensor does not turn off within 100 ms.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the side registration guide motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the side registration guide motor.	Replace the side registration guide motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the side registration guide home position sensor.	Replace the side registration guide home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the side registration guide home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Replace the centerfold unit main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8320	<b>Document finisher centerfold unit centering plate problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the centering plate is not detected in the home position when the centering plate returns to the home position.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the centering plate motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the centering plate motor.	Replace the centering plate motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the centering plate home position sensor.	Replace the centering plate home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the centering plate home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Replace the centerfold unit main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8330	<b>Document finisher centerfold blade problem</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During initialization, the centerfold blade is not detected in the home position within a specified period of time.</li> </ul>	Loose connection of the centerfold blade motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the centerfold blade motor.	Replace the centerfold blade motor and check for correct operation.
		Malfunction of the centerfold blade home position sensor.	Replace the centerfold blade home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the centerfold blade home position sensor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Replace the centerfold unit main PWB and check for correct operation.

### 1-4-3 Electric problems

#### Finisher

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The paper conveying motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the paper conveying motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken paper conveying motor gear.	Check visually and replace the paper conveying motor gear if necessary.
	Defective paper conveying motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the paper conveying motor operates when YC14-3 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the paper conveying motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC14-3 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(2) The upper paper conveying belt motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the upper paper conveying belt motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken upper paper conveying belt motor gear.	Check visually and replace the upper paper conveying belt motor gear if necessary.
	Defective upper paper conveying belt motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the upper paper conveying belt motor operates when YC24-A1, YC24-A3, YC24-B28 and YC-B30 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the upper paper conveying belt motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC24-A1, YC24-A3, YC24-B28 and YC-B30 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(3) The lower paper conveying belt motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the lower paper conveying belt motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken lower paper conveying belt motor gear.	Check visually and replace the lower paper conveying belt motor gear if necessary.
	Defective lower paper conveying belt motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the lower paper conveying belt motor operates when YC24-A4, YC24-A6, YC24-B25 and YC-B27 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the lower paper conveying belt motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC24-A4, YC24-A6, YC24-B25 and YC-B27 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(4) The front upper side registration guide motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the front upper side registration guide motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken front upper side registration guide motor gear.	Check visually and replace the front upper side registration guide motor gear if necessary.
	Defective front upper side registration guide motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the front upper side registration guide motor operates when YC24-A7, YC24-A9, YC24-B22 and YC-B24 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the front upper side registration guide motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC24-A7, YC24-A9, YC24-B22 and YC-B24 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(5) The rear upper side registration guide motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the rear upper side registration guide motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken rear upper side registration guide motor gear.	Check visually and replace the rear upper side registration guide motor gear if necessary.
	Defective front upper side registration guide motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the rear upper side registration guide motor operates when YC24-A10, YC24-A12, YC24-B19 and YC-B21 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the rear upper side registration guide motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC24-A10, YC24-A12, YC24-B19 and YC-B21 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(6) The lower side registration guide motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the lower side registration guide motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken lower side registration guide motor gear.	Check visually and replace the lower side registration guide motor gear if necessary.
	Defective lower side registration guide motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the lower side registration guide motor operates when YC24-A13, YC24-A15, YC24-B16 and YC-B18 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the lower side registration guide motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC24-A13, YC24-A15, YC24-B16 and YC-B18 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(7) The main tray elevation motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the main tray elevation motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken main tray elevation motor gear.	Check visually and replace the main tray elevation motor gear if necessary.
	Defective main tray elevation motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the main tray elevation motor operates when YC9-1 and YC9-2 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the main tray elevation motor.
	Defective finisher drive PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC9-1 and YC9-2 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher drive PWB.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC12-17 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(8) The front stapler motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the front stapler motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken front stapler motor gear.	Check visually and replace the front stapler motor gear if necessary.
	Defective front stapler motor.	If the front stapler motor does not operate when 5 V DC is output to YC18-A13 on the finisher main PWB, replace the front stapler motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	If 5 V DC is not output from YC18-A13 on the finisher main PWB, replace the finisher main PWB.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(9) The rear stapler motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the rear stapler motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken rear stapler motor gear.	Check visually and replace the rear stapler motor gear if necessary.
	Defective rear stapler motor.	If the rear stapler motor does not operate when 5 V DC is output to YC18-A17 on the finisher main PWB, replace the rear stapler motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	If 5 V DC is not output from YC18-A17 on the finisher main PWB, replace the finisher main PWB.
(10) The front clincher motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the front clincher motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken front clincher motor gear.	Check visually and replace the front clincher motor gear if necessary.
	Defective front clincher motor.	If the front clincher motor does not operate when 5 V DC is output to YC18-B2 on the finisher main PWB, replace the front clincher motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	If 5 V DC is not output from YC18-B2 on the finisher main PWB, replace the finisher main PWB.
(11) The rear clincher motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the rear clincher motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken rear clincher motor gear.	Check visually and replace the rear clincher motor gear if necessary.
	Defective rear clincher motor.	If the rear clincher motor does not operate when 5 V DC is output to YC18-A25 on the finisher main PWB, replace the rear clincher motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	If 5 V DC is not output from YC18-A25 on the finisher main PWB, replace the finisher main PWB.
(12) The paper entry motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the paper entry motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken paper entry motor gear.	Check visually and replace the paper entry motor gear if necessary.
	Defective paper entry motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the paper entry motor operates when YC12-1, YC12-3, YC12-4 and YC12-6 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the paper entry motor.
	Defective finisher drive PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC12-1, YC12-3, YC12-4 and YC12-6 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher drive PWB.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC25-12 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(13) The siding drum motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the siding drum motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken siding drum motor gear.	Check visually and replace the siding drum motor gear if necessary.
	Defective siding drum motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the siding drum motor operates when YC11-1, YC11-3, YC11-4 and YC11-6 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the siding drum motor.
	Defective finisher drive PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC11-1, YC11-3, YC11-4 and YC11-6 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher drive PWB.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC25-9 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(14) The movable guide motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the movable guide motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken movable guide motor gear.	Check visually and replace the movable guide motor gear if necessary.
	Defective movable guide motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the movable guide motor operates when YC16-1, YC16-3, YC16-4 and YC16-6 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the movable guide motor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC16-1, YC16-3, YC16-4 and YC16-6 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(15) The eject motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the eject motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken eject motor gear.	Check visually and replace the eject motor gear if necessary.
	Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the eject motor operates when YC11-7, YC11-9, YC11-10 and YC11-12 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the eject motor.
	Defective finisher drive PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC11-7, YC11-9, YC11-10 and YC11-12 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher drive PWB.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC25-6 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(16) The cooling fan motor does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the cooling fan motor.
	Poor contact in the cooling fan motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Check if YC26-1 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(17) The eject guide solenoid does not operate.	Broken eject guide solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the eject guide solenoid.
	Poor contact in the eject guide solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC15-2 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(18) The paper holder solenoid does not operate.	Broken paper holder solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the paper holder solenoid.
	Poor contact in the paper holder solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher drive PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC10-2 and YC10-3 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher drive PWB.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC25-1 and YC25-2 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(19) The paper forwarding pulley solenoid does not operate.	Broken paper forwarding pulley solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the paper forwarding pulley solenoid.
	Poor contact in the paper forwarding pulley solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC24-B15 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(20) The feedshift solenoid A does not operate.	Broken feedshift solenoid A coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the feedshift solenoid A.
	Poor contact in the feedshift solenoid A connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC15-4 and YC15-5 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(21) The feedshift solenoid B does not operate.	Broken feedshift solenoid B coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the feedshift solenoid B.
	Poor contact in the feedshift solenoid B connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher drive PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC5-2 and YC5-3 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher drive PWB.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC25-3 and YC25-4 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.
(22) The feedshift solenoid C does not operate.	Broken feedshift solenoid C coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the feedshift solenoid C.
	Poor contact in the feedshift solenoid C connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC15-10 and YC15-11 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(23) The lock solenoid does not operate.	Broken lock solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the lock solenoid.
	Poor contact in the lock solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC17-2 and YC17-3 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.

**Centerfold unit**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(1) The main motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the main motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken main motor gear.	Check visually and replace the main motor if necessary.
	Defective main motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the main motor operates when CN3-1 and CN3-2 on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the main motor.
	Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if CN3-1 and CN3-2 on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the centerfold unit main PWB.
(2) The centerfold blade motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the centerfold blade motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken centerfold blade motor gear.	Check visually and replace the centerfold blade motor if necessary.
	Defective centerfold blade motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the centerfold blade motor operates when CN3-3 and CN3-4 on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the centerfold blade motor.
	Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if CN3-3 and CN3-4 on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the centerfold unit main PWB.
(3) The side registration guide motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the side registration guide motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken side registration guide motor gear.	Check visually and replace the side registration guide motor if necessary.
	Defective side registration guide motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the side registration guide motor operates when CN4-1, CN4-2, CN4-3 and CN4-4 on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the side registration guide motor.
	Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if CN4-1, CN4-2, CN4-3 and CN4-4 on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the centerfold unit main PWB.
(4) The centering plate motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the centering plate motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken centering plate motor gear.	Check visually and replace the centering plate motor if necessary.
	Defective centering plate motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the centering plate motor operates when CN5-7A, CN5-9A, CN5-22B and CN5-24B on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the centering plate motor.
	Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if CN4-7, CN4-8, CN4-9 and CN4-10 on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the centerfold unit main PWB.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(5) The pressures release solenoid does not operate.	Broken pressures release solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the pressures release solenoid.
	Poor contact in the pressures release solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective centerfold unit main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if CN6-27 and CN6-28 on the centerfold unit main PWB go low. If not, replace the centerfold unit main PWB.

### Multi job tray

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(1) The multi job tray elevation motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the multi job tray elevation motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken multi job tray elevation motor gear.	Check visually and replace the multi job tray elevation motor if necessary.
	Defective multi job tray elevation motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the multi job tray elevation motor operates when YC8-7 and YC8-8 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the multi job tray elevation motor.
	Defective finisher drive PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC8-7 and YC8-8 on the finisher drive PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher drive PWB.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC12-14 on the finisher main PWB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.

### Punch unit

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(1) The punch motor does not operate.	Poor contact in the punch motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken punch motor gear.	Check visually and replace the punch motor if necessary.
	Defective punch motor.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if the punch motor operates when YC3-3 and YC3-4 on the punch PWB go low. If not, replace the punch motor.
	Defective punch PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC3-3 and YC3-4 on the punch PWB go low. If not, replace the punch PWB.
(2) The punch solenoid does not operate.	Broken punch solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the punch solenoid.
	Poor contact in the punch solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Run maintenance item U240 and check if YC15-7 and YC15-8 on the finisher main PWB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PWB.

**1-4-4 Mechanical problems****Finisher**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(1) Paper jam.	Check if the paper entry pulley correctly contacts paper entry roller.	If not, fix as necessary.
	Check if the intermediate tray paper entry roller correctly contacts the intermediate tray paper entry pulley.	If not, fix as necessary.
(2) Abnormal noise.	Check if all the rollers and gears rotate smoothly.	If there is a problem, grease the bearings and gears.

**Centerfold unit**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(1) Paper jam.	Check if the paper entry pulley, paper entry roller, eject pulley and eject roller are deformed.	If they are, replace.
(2) Abnormal noise.	Check if all the rollers and gears rotate smoothly.	If there is a problem, grease the bearings and gears.

**Multi job tray**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(1) Paper jam.	Check if the finisher's eject pulley and eject roller are deformed.	If they are, replace.
(2) Abnormal noise.	Check if all the rollers and gears rotate smoothly.	If there is a problem, grease the bearings and gears.

## 1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

### (1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the Power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet. Turning off the main power switch before pressing the Power key to off may cause damage to the equipped hard disk.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands. The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.

Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

Take care not to get the cables caught.

To reassemble the parts, use the original screws. If the types and the sizes of screws are not known, refer to the PARTS LIST.

## 1-5-2 Finisher

### (1) Correcting paper curling

Follow the below procedure if paper ejected from the finisher is curled.

#### <Procedure>

1. Set the machine to the non-sort mode and run paper through the machine to make a test copy.
2. Check if the paper that is ejected from the finisher is curled. If it is, make the following adjustment.

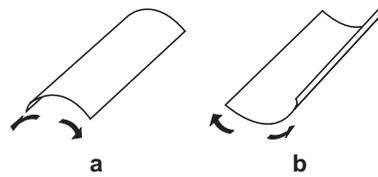


Figure 1-5-1

#### If the paper curls downward (a in figure 1-5-1)

1. Open the front cover.
2. Rotate the lower lever by one mark in the direction of the higher numbers. There are five marks.
3. Close the front cover.
4. Run paper through the machine and check if it is still curled downward.
5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 until the ejected paper does not curl downward anymore.

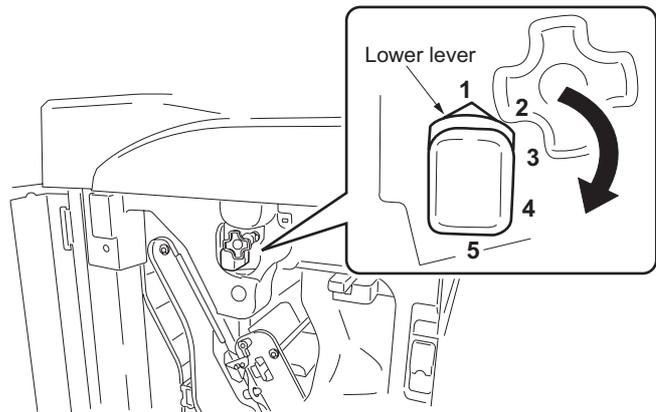


Figure 1-5-2

#### If the paper curls upward (b in figure 1-5-1)

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the two screws and then the inner left cover.

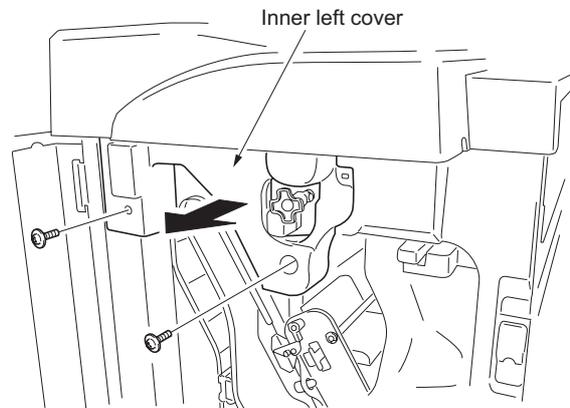
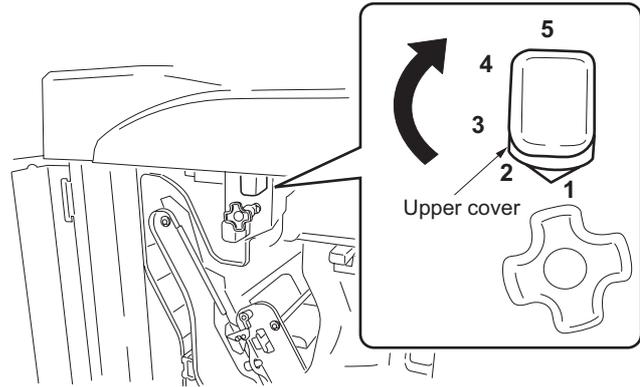


Figure 1-5-3

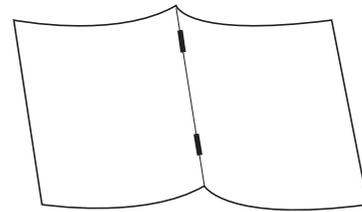
3. Rotate the upper lever by one mark in the direction of the higher numbers. There are five marks.
4. Close the front cover.
5. Run paper through the machine and check if it is still curled upward.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 until the ejected paper does not curl upward anymore.
7. When the correction is completed, reattach the inner left cover.

**Figure 1-5-4**

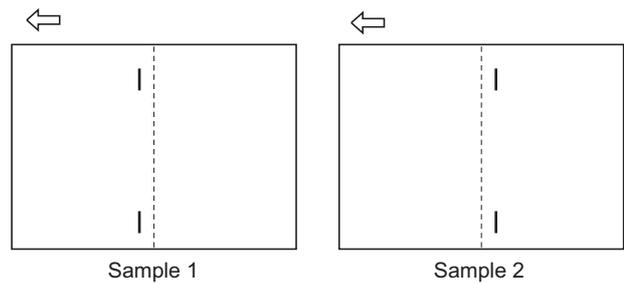
**(2) Correcting centerfold-stapling**

Follow the below procedure when the stapling position is off from the center when the machine is in the stitching copy mode.

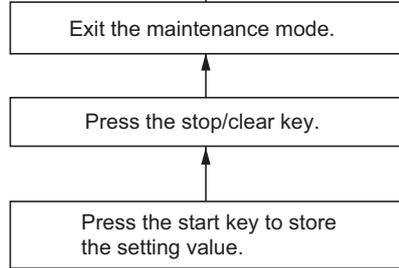
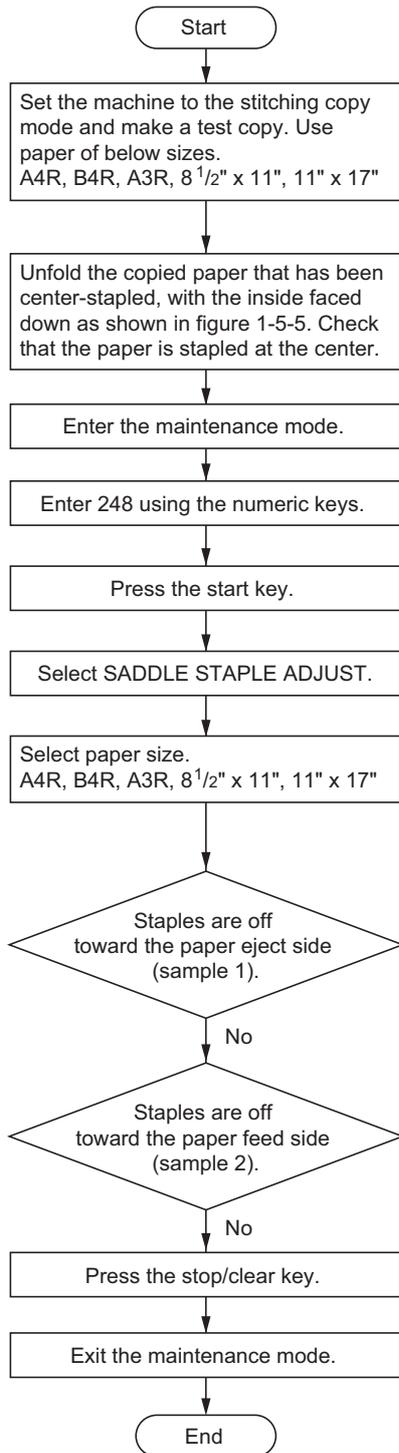
**Procedure**



**Figure 1-5-5**



**Figure 1-5-6**



Setting range: -10 to +10  
 Initial value: 0  
 Changing the value by 1 changes the position of the stapling by approximately 0.6 mm (reference value). Increasing the setting value moves the stapling position toward the paper eject side. Decreasing it moves the stapling position toward the paper feed side.

**(3) Adjusting the stapler unit mounting position**

Perform this operation when replacing a stapler unit or when a stapling malfunction occurs.

Since the front stapler and the rear stapler in the finisher have the same construction, only the procedure for the front stapler is described below. Use similar procedure for adjusting the rear stapler.

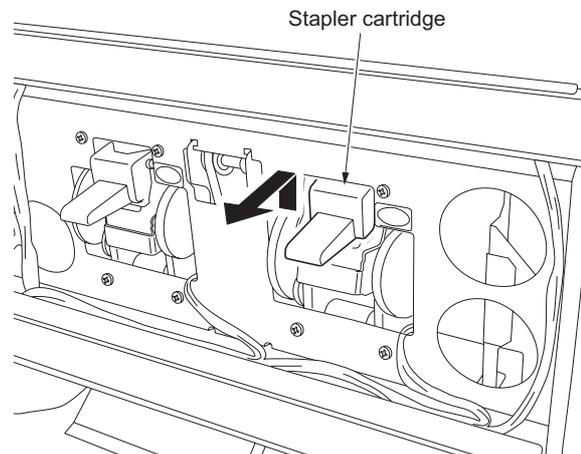
**Tool required for adjustment**

Stapler adjustment tool (P/N 3B868010)

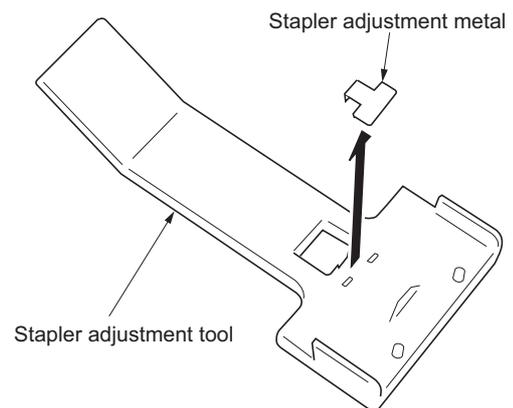
Cartridge adjustment tool (P/N 303H368040)

**Procedure**

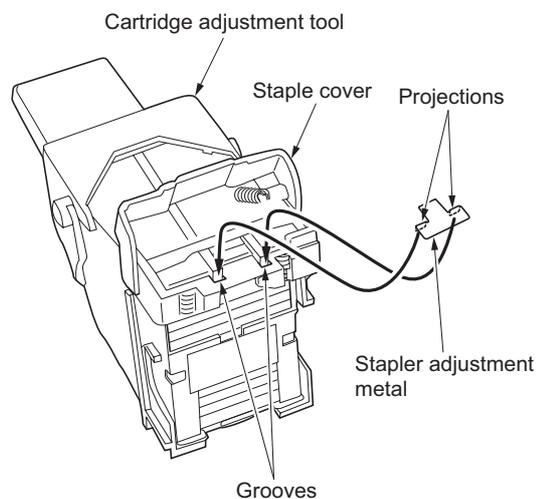
1. Pull out the intermediate tray and remove the stapler cartridge from the stapler.

**Figure 1-5-7**

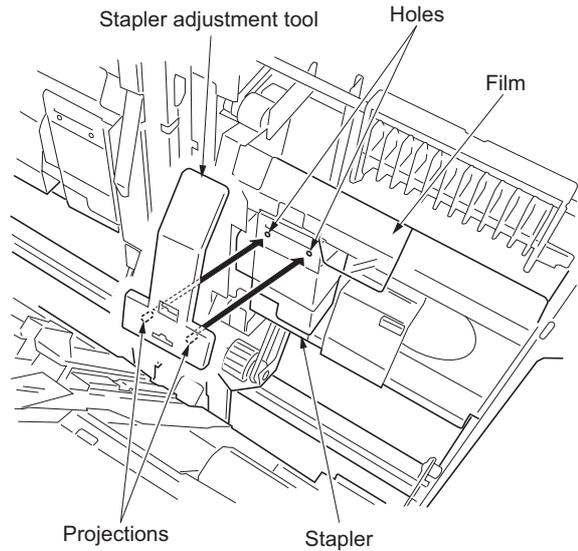
2. Remove the stapler adjustment metal from the stapler adjustment tool (P/N 3B868010).

**Figure 1-5-8**

3. Open the staple cover of the cartridge adjustment tool (P/N 303H368040).
4. Attach the stapler adjustment metal to the cartridge adjustment tool and close the staple cover. Attach the stapler adjustment metal by inserting its projections into the grooves of the cartridge adjustment tool.
5. Install the cartridge adjustment tool into the stapler.

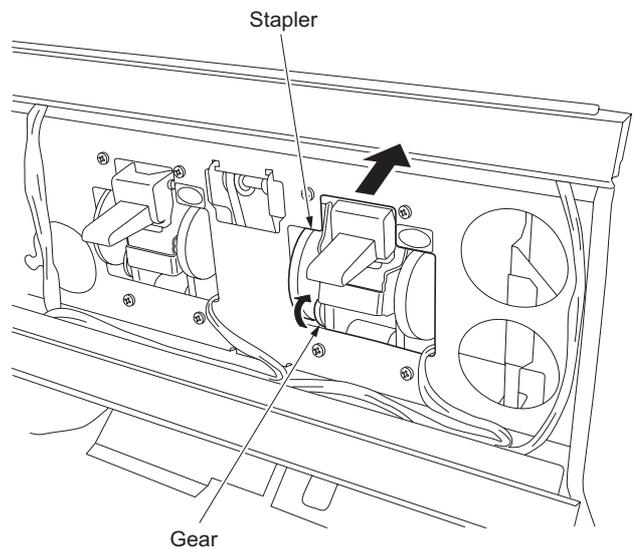
**Figure 1-5-9**

6. Open the intermediate tray and attach the stapler adjustment tool to the stapler. Attach the stapler adjustment tool by inserting its projections into the stapler holes. In addition, be careful not to get the film caught when attaching the tool.

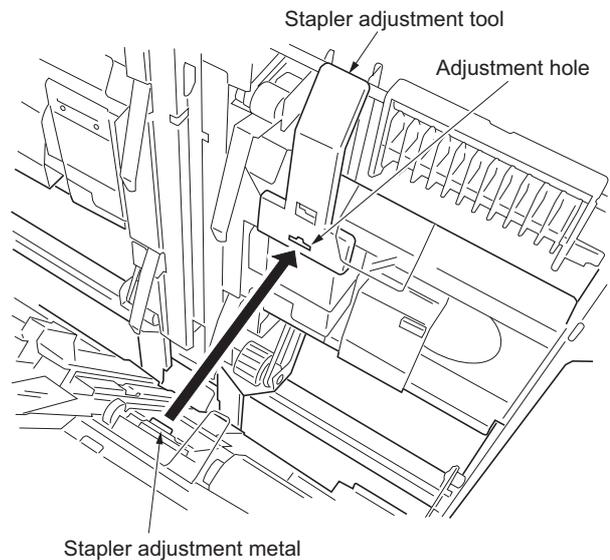


**Figure 1-5-10**

7. Close the intermediate tray. Do not carry out step 8 with the intermediate tray open because the stapler may be damaged.
8. Turn the gear manually to push the stapler into the inner part and ensure that the stapler adjustment metal is inserted smoothly into the adjustment hole of the stapler adjustment tool.



**Figure 1-5-11**

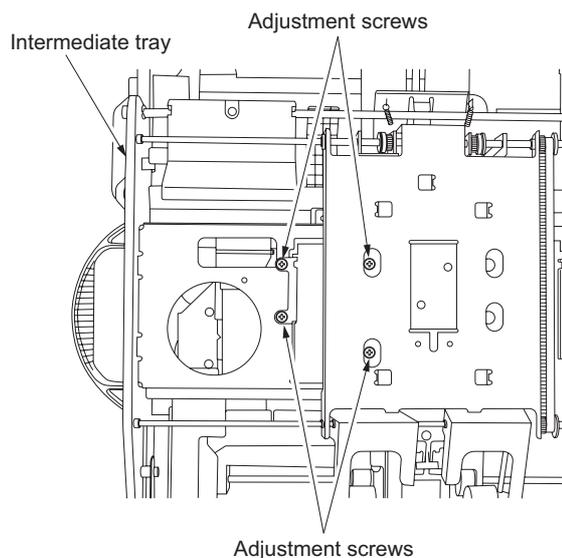


**Figure 1-5-12**

9. If the stapler adjustment metal is not inserted into the adjustment hole, loosen the four adjustment screws on the intermediate tray and adjust the stapler unit mounting position so that the metal is inserted into the hole.

At this time, turn the gear manually further and ensure that the stapler is securely pushed into the inner part.

10. Tighten the adjustment screws in the order shown below.
- 1) Tighten the upper two screws loosely.
  - 2) Tighten the lower two screws loosely.
  - 3) Finally tighten the upper two screws.
  - 4) Finally tighten the lower two screws.



**Figure 1-5-13**

11. Turn the gear manually to pull back the stapler to its original position and then remove the cartridge adjustment tool.
12. Remove the stapler adjustment metal and the stapler adjustment tool.
13. With the stapler cartridge removed, return the intermediate tray to its original position and mount the finisher to the machine. Turn the machine main power switch on (to detect the noncartridge status).
14. Pull out the intermediate tray again and attach the stapler cartridge. Mount the finisher to the machine and turn the main power switch on.
15. Select the staple mode (mode specifying the stapler that has been adjusted) and carry out this mode.  
After the staples in the cartridge are automatically fed in test stapling, the staple mode will be carried out.
16. Check the shape of the staples on the rear side that have been used in the test stapling and the staple mode above.  
If the shape is defective, perform the adjustment again.

Shape of staples on the rear side	
Normal	Defective
<p><math>a \leq 0.5\text{mm}</math></p>	<p><math>a &gt; 0.5\text{mm}</math></p>
<p><math>a \leq 0.5\text{mm}</math></p>	

**(4) Centering stapling position**

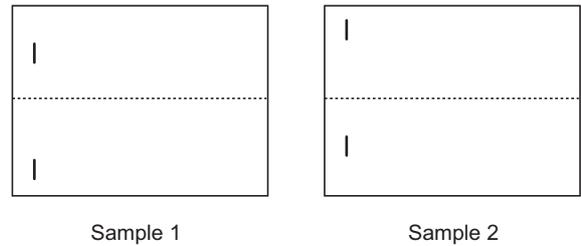
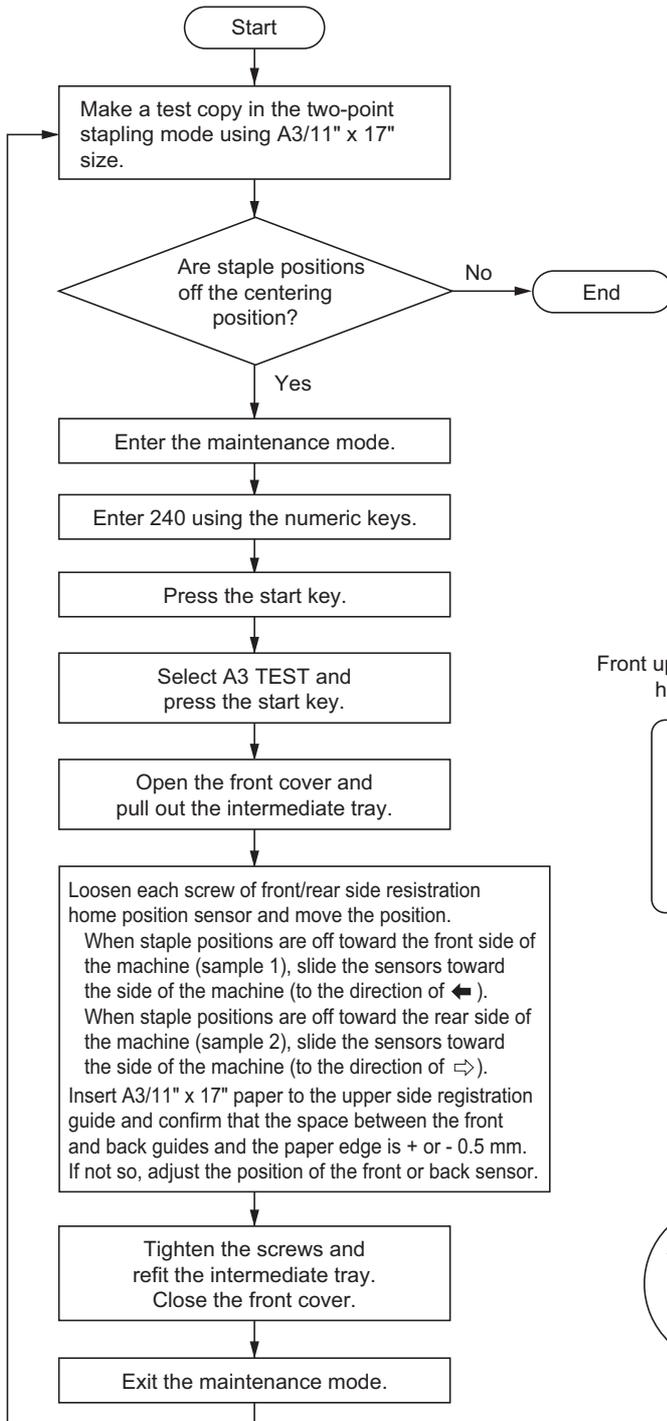
Follow the below procedure if the positioning of stapling are off the centerline of paper when the machine is in the two-point stapling mode.

**Caution**

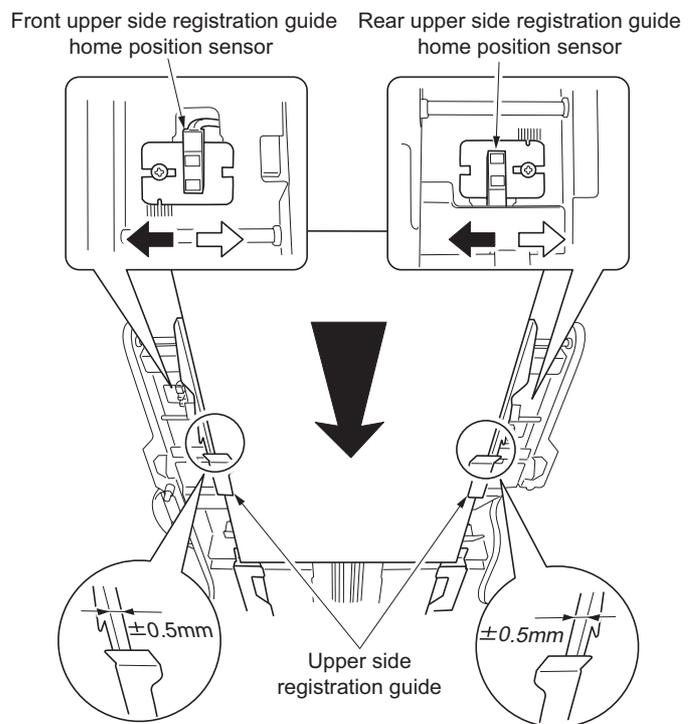
Before making the following adjustment, ensure that the center position of each cassette in the machine is correct. When the adjustment distance of the upper side registration guide is too large, follow through on page 1-5-8 to adjust the position of the lower side registration guide.

**Procedure**

- Position adjustment of upper side registration guide



**Figure 1-5-14**



**Figure 1-5-15**

- Position adjustment of lower side registration guide

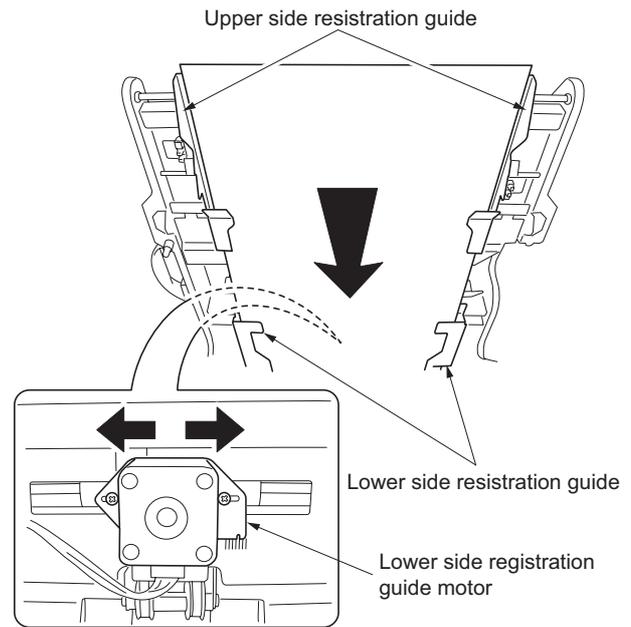
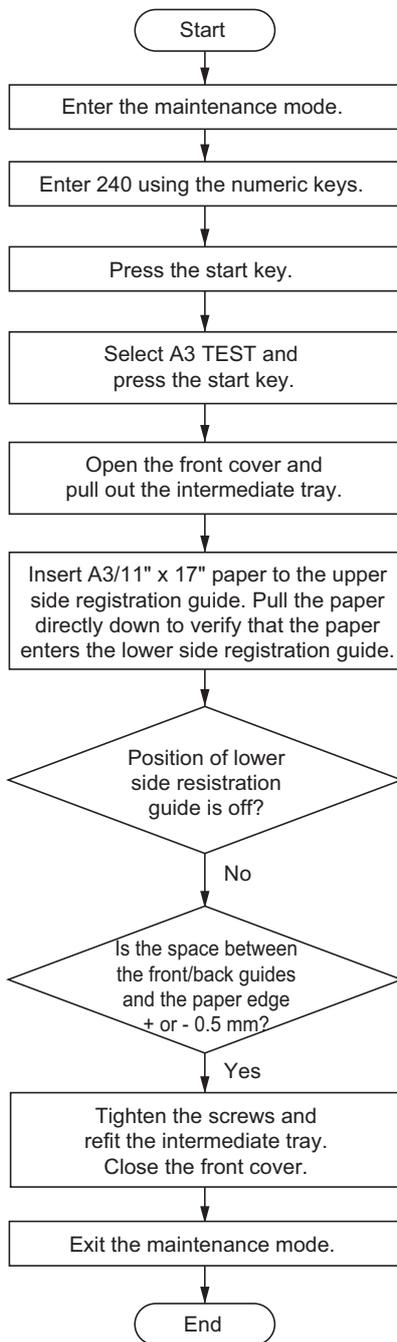


Figure 1-5-16

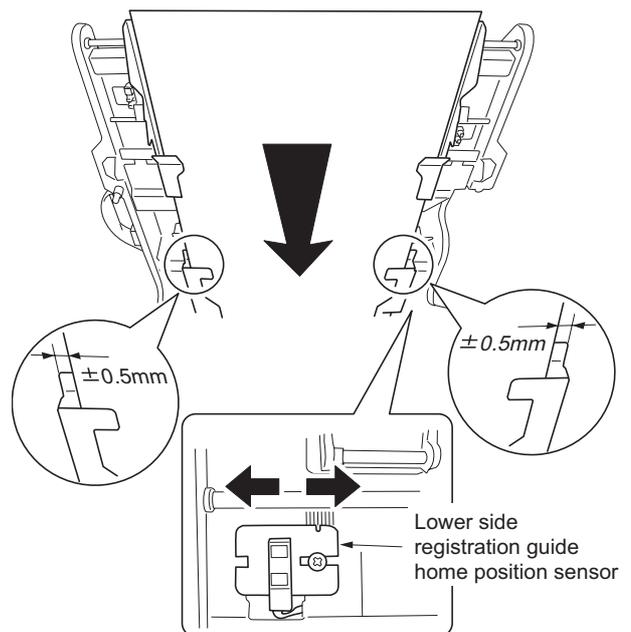


Figure 1-5-17

### 1-5-3 Centerfold unit

#### (1) Detaching and refitting the centerfold blade

Follow the below procedure to clean or replace the centerfold blade.

##### Procedure

1. Pull out the centerfold unit from the finisher.
2. Loosen the two screws, slide the retainers in the direction of the arrow, and remove the centerfold unit from the finisher.

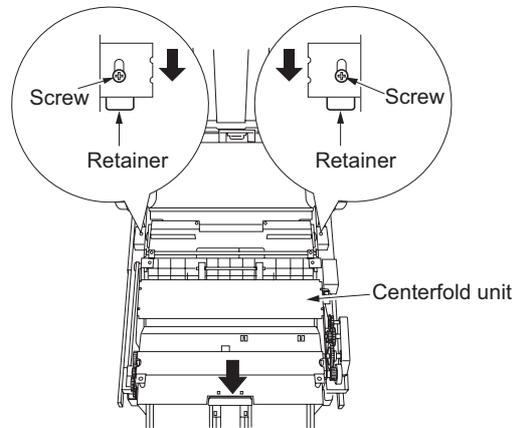


Figure 1-5-18

3. Stand the centerfold unit with its left side facing down.
4. Remove the six screws locking down the left base followed by the base.

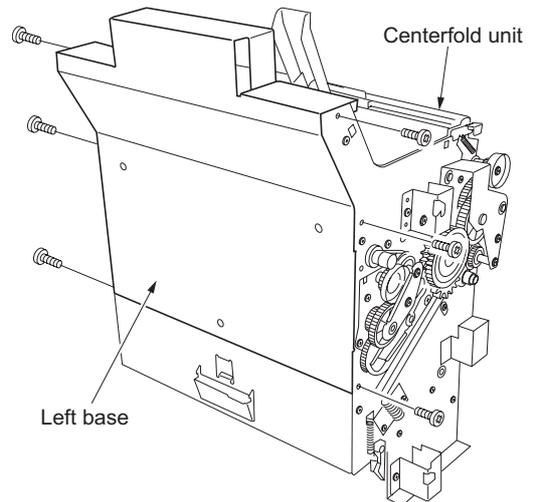


Figure 1-5-19

5. Disconnect the 2-pin connector of the blade motor.
6. Remove the two screws and then remove the blade motor.

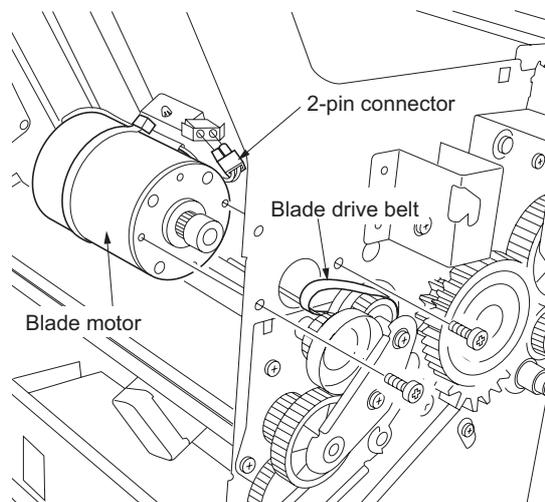


Figure 1-5-20

7. Remove the two springs from the blade retainer.
8. Remove the five screws locking down the blade retainer followed by the retainer.
9. Remove the centerfold blade.
10. Clean or replace the centerfold blade.
11. Refit all the removed parts.  
When attaching the centerfold blade to the blade support plate, fit the two holes in the blade over the two projections on the blade support plate.

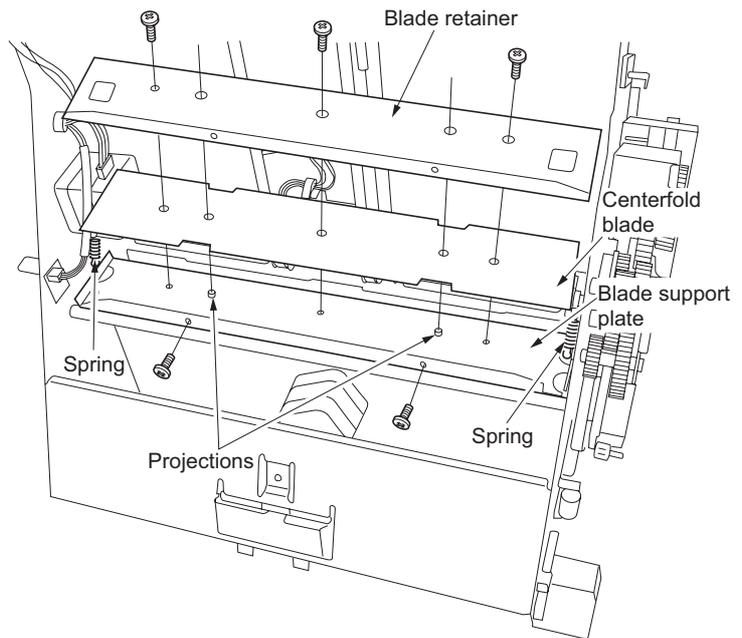
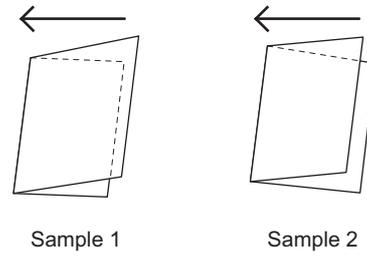
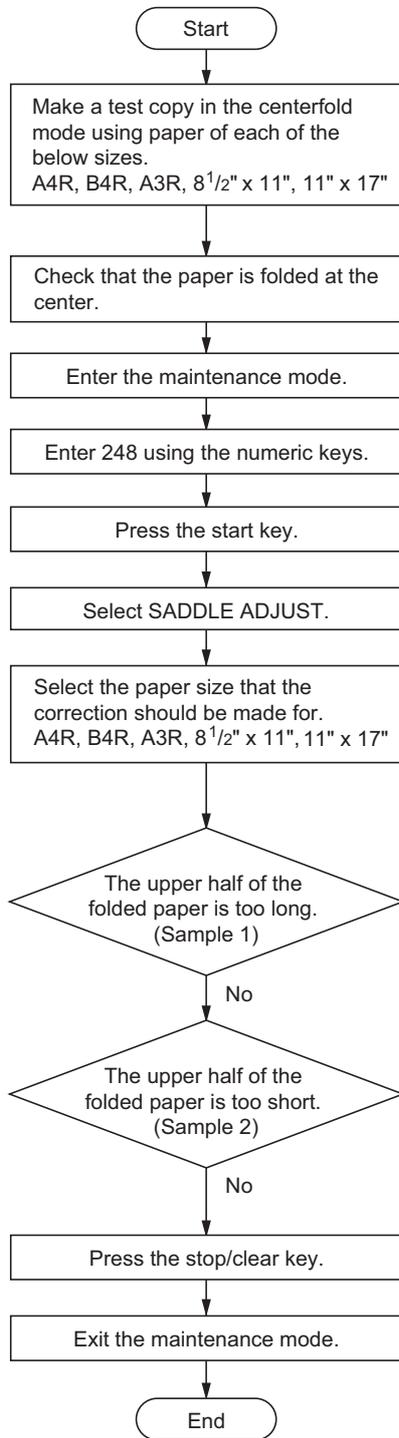


Figure 1-5-21

**(2) Adjusting the paper folding position**

Follow the below procedure when the folding position is not correct in the centerfold mode.

**Procedure**



**Figure 1-5-22**

Setting range: -10 to +10  
 Initial value: 0  
 Changing the value by 1 moves the folding position by approximately 0.55 mm (reference value).  
 Increasing the value makes the upper half of folded paper shorter while decreasing it makes the upper half longer.

## 1-5-4 Punch unit

### (1) Centering punch-holes

Follow the below procedure if the positioning of punch holes are off the centerline of paper when the machine is in the punch mode.

#### Caution:

Before making the following adjustment, ensure that the center position of each cassette in the machine is correct.

#### Procedure

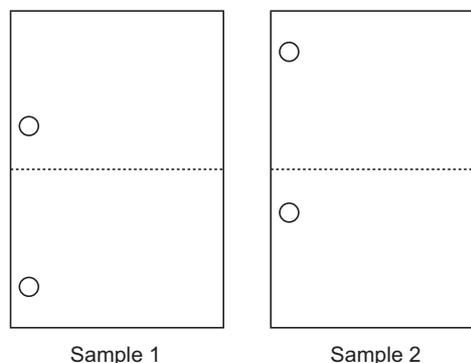
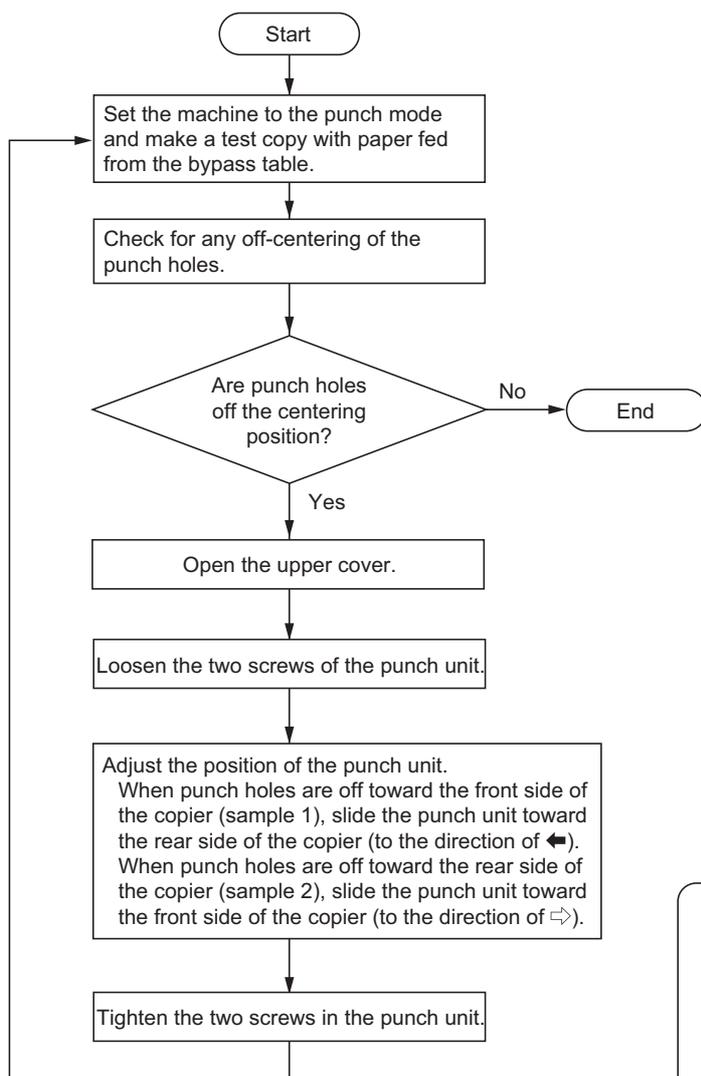


Figure 1-5-23

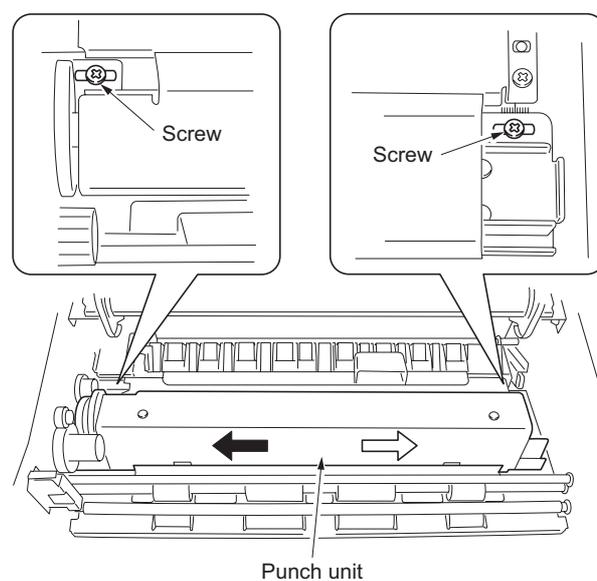
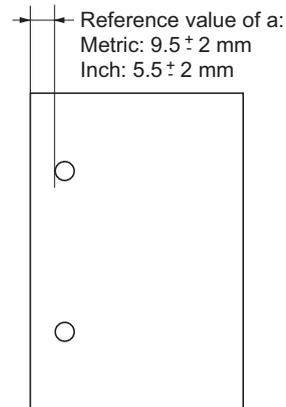
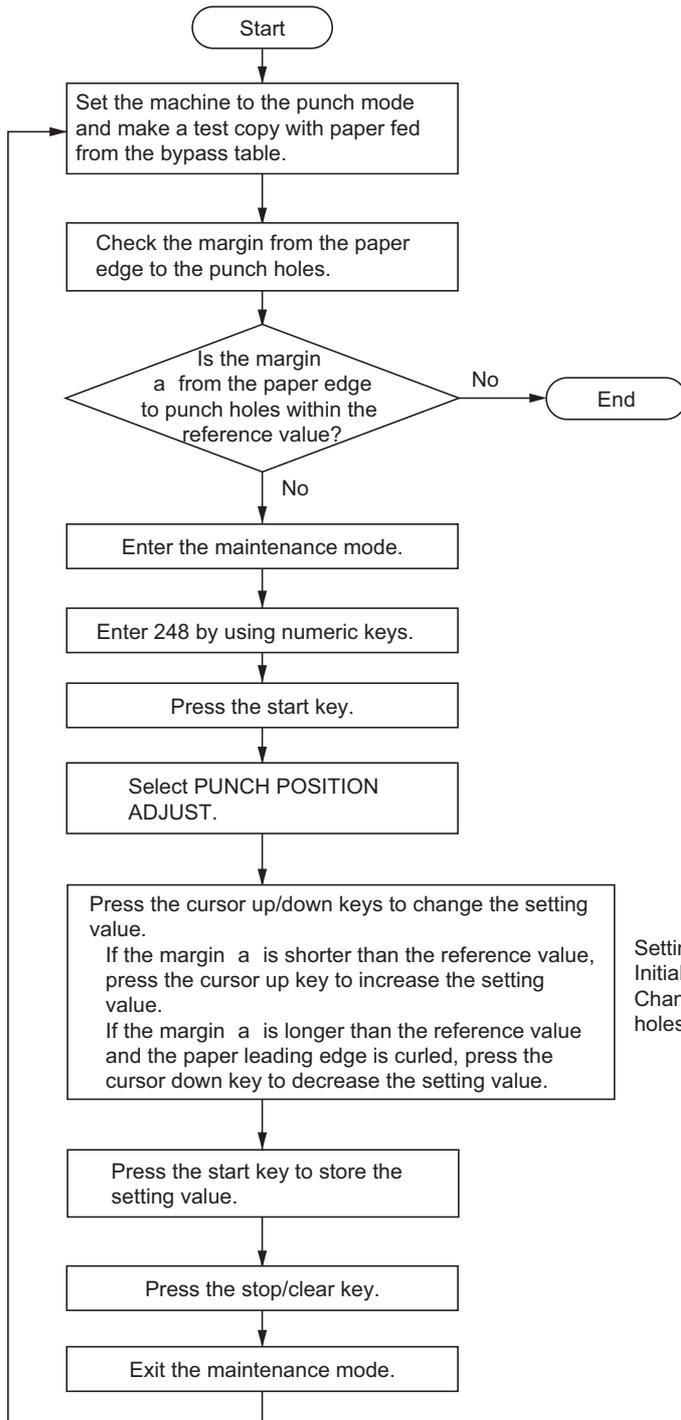


Figure 1-5-24

**(2) Setting margin from the leading edge to punch holes**

Follow the below procedure if the margin from the paper edge to punch holes is off the reference value.

**Procedure**



**Figure 1-5-25**

Setting range: -10 to +10  
Initial value: 0  
Changing the value by 1 moves the position of punch holes by approximately 0.25 mm (reference value).

## 1-6-1 Upgrading the version of the firmware of the finisher main PWB

Firmware upgrading requires the following tools:

Compact Flash (Products manufactured by SANDISK are recommended.)

### NOTE

When writing data to a new Compact Flash from a computer, be sure to format it in advance.

### Procedure

1. Enter the maintenance mode.
2. Run maintenance item U019 (Displaying the ROM version) to check the current version of the ROM.
3. Exit the maintenance mode.
4. Turn the machine off from the main power switch and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
5. Release three inserted parts and then remove the CF cover.

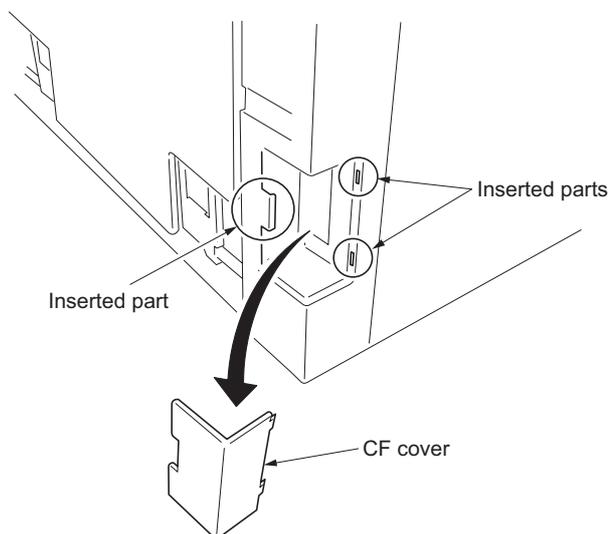


Figure 1-6-1

6. Insert the CompactFlash card in the CF slot on the finisher main PWB.
  - \* Be sure to face the front side of the CompactFlash card to the machine rear and insert it straight until it stops. If the main power switch is turned on when the CompactFlash card is not properly inserted, the PWB may be damaged.
7. Plug the power cable into a wall outlet and turn the machine on from the main power switch.
  - \* During upgrading the firmware, LED on PWB will be blinking. (Version up takes about 20 to 25 sec.)

### Caution:

Never turn the main power switch off during upgrading.

The status of version up will not be shown on the operation panel and do not wrongly press any operation keys.

8. After completion of the version up, LED on PWB stops to blink and lights up.
9. Turn the machine off from the main power switch and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
10. Remove the CompactFlash card from the CF slot on the finisher main PWB.
11. Refit the CF cover.
12. Plug the power cable into a wall outlet and turn the machine on from the main power switch.
13. Enter the maintenance mode.
14. Run maintenance item U019 (Displaying the ROM version) to check ROM version upgrading was successful.
15. Exit the maintenance mode.

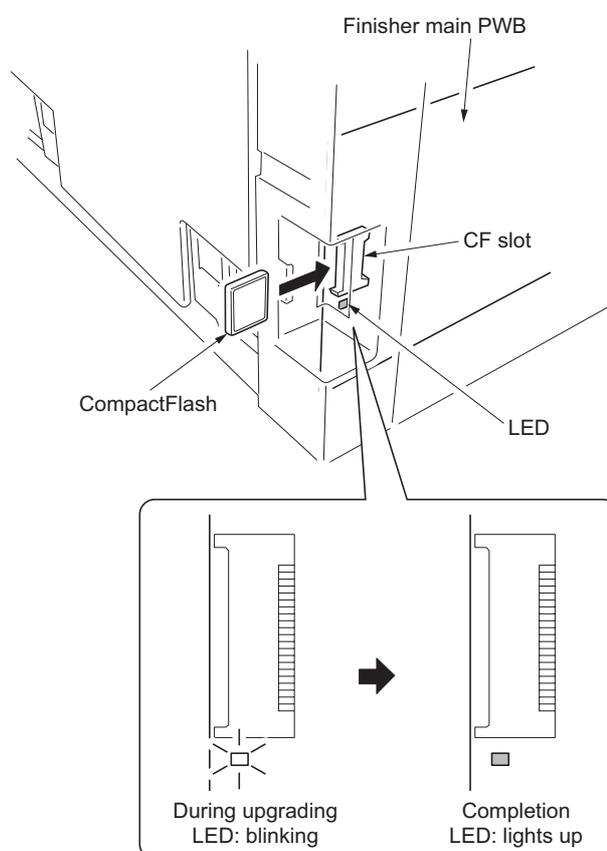


Figure 1-6-2

### 1-6-2 Requirements on finisher main PWB replacement

#### NOTE

When replacing the finisher main PWB, be sure to conform jumper switch setting of the replaced PWB to that of the removed PWB.

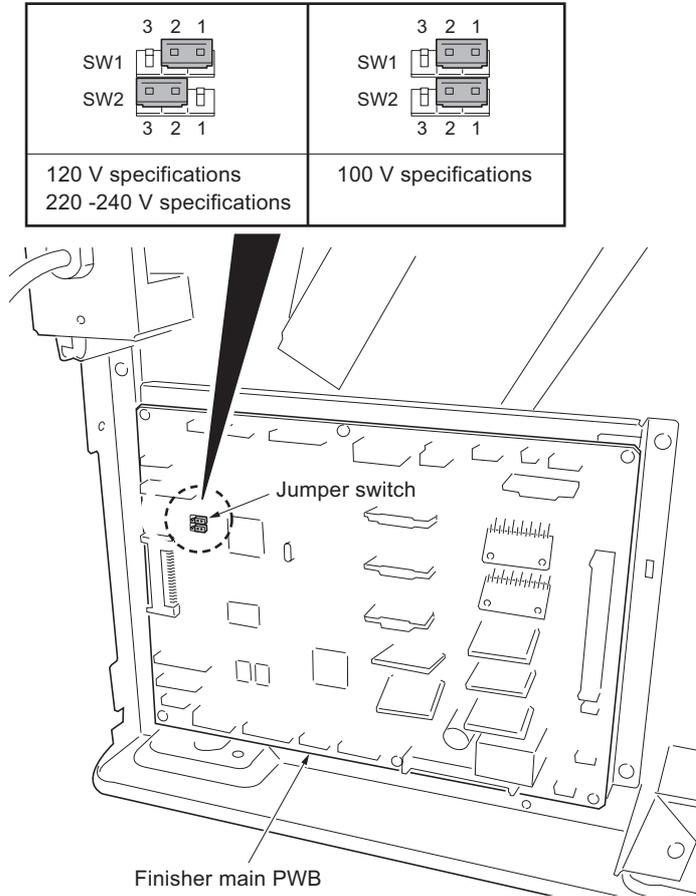


Figure 1-6-3

## 2-1-1 Finisher

### (1) Paper insertion section

The paper insertion section inserts paper from the machine into the finisher and then conveys it to the feedshift section. The paper is fed out to the finisher. The paper entry motor (PEM) will be activated in a certain period of time after the paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on to convey the paper to the feedshift section. Attaching the paper to the paper entry roller for a certain period of time prevents skewed feeding.

Pressure rollers A and B correct upward paper curling and pressure rollers C and D correct downward paper curling.

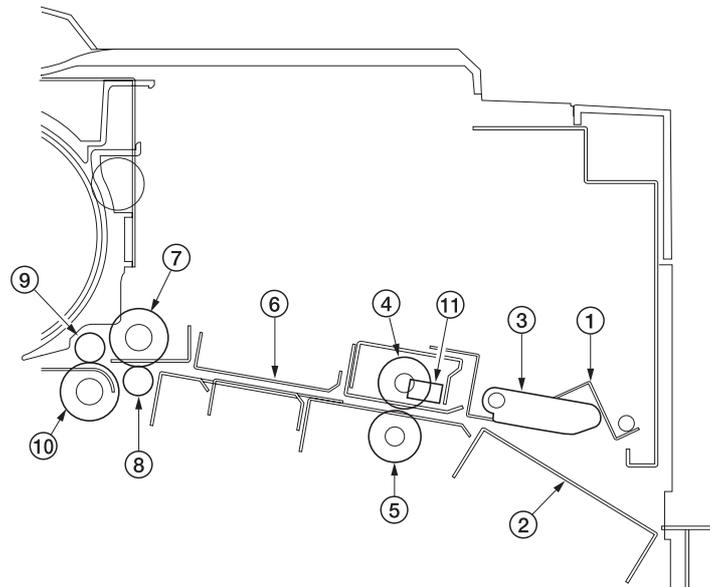


Figure 2-1-1 Paper insertion section

- |                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Upper paper entry guide plate | (7) Pressure roller A         |
| (2) Lower paper entry guide plate | (8) Pressure roller B         |
| (3) Paper entry guide             | (9) Pressure roller C         |
| (4) Upper paper entry roller      | (10) Pressure roller D        |
| (5) Lower paper entry roller      | (11) Paper entry sensor (PES) |
| (6) Paper conveying guide         |                               |

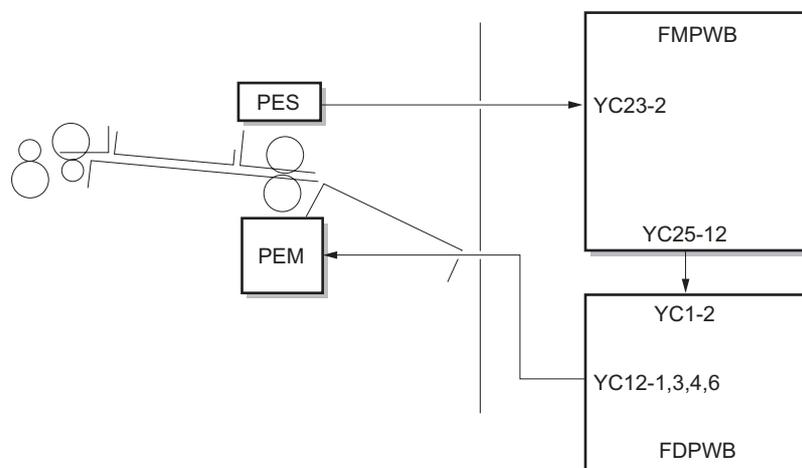
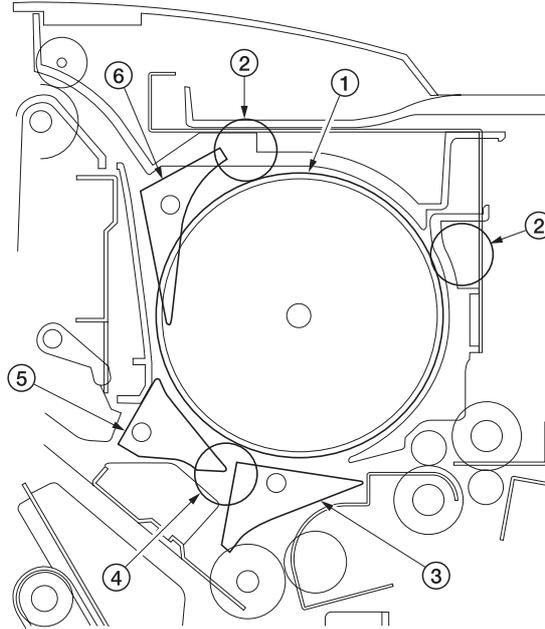


Figure 2-1-2 Block diagram of the paper insertion section

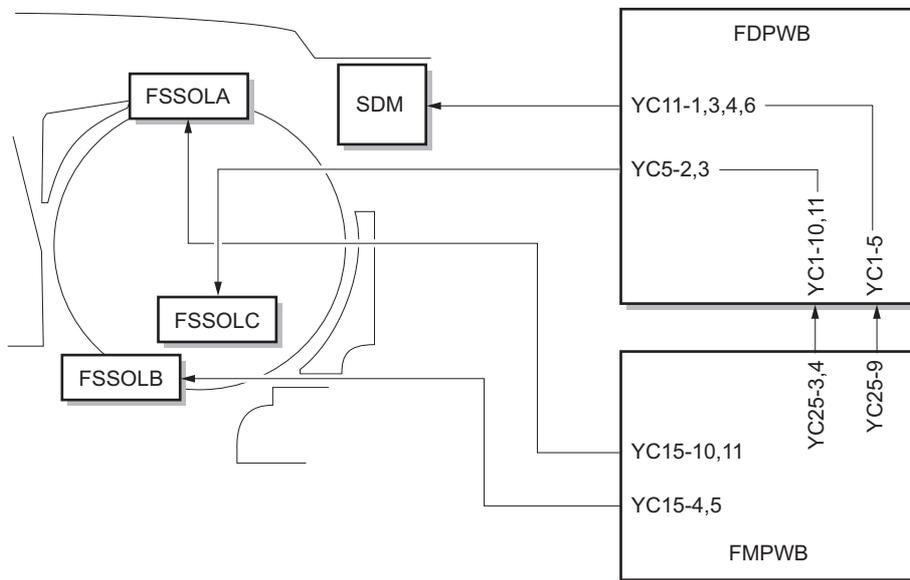
**(2) Feedshift section**

The feedshift section switches the path of the paper conveyed from the paper insertion section so as to convey the paper to the intermediate tray, main tray or sub tray.



**Figure 2-1-3 Feedshift section**

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (1) Siding drum                | (4) Sub feed roller            |
| (2) Siding pulleys             | (5) Left eject feedshift guide |
| (3) Main eject feedshift guide | (6) Sub eject feedshift guide  |



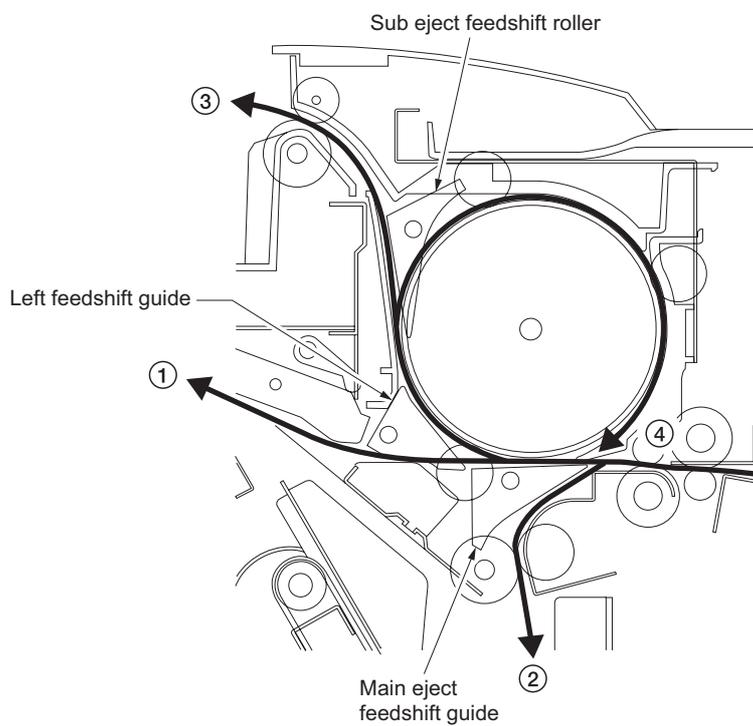
**Figure 2-1-4 Block diagram of the feedshift section**

### Paper path switching

The paper path is switched by the operation of the main eject feedshift guide, left eject feedshift guide or sub eject feedshift guide.

There are four paper paths in the feedshift section as shown below.

The guide corresponding to the path to the selected tray operates to switch the paper path appropriately.



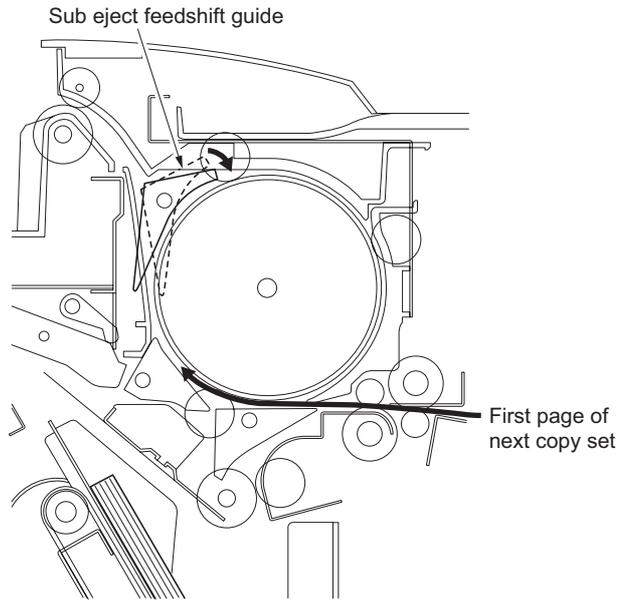
**Figure 2-1-5**

- (1) Paper path to the main tray
- (2) Paper path to the intermediate tray
- (3) Paper path to the sub tray
- (4) Paper path to the siding drum

**Siding drum operation**

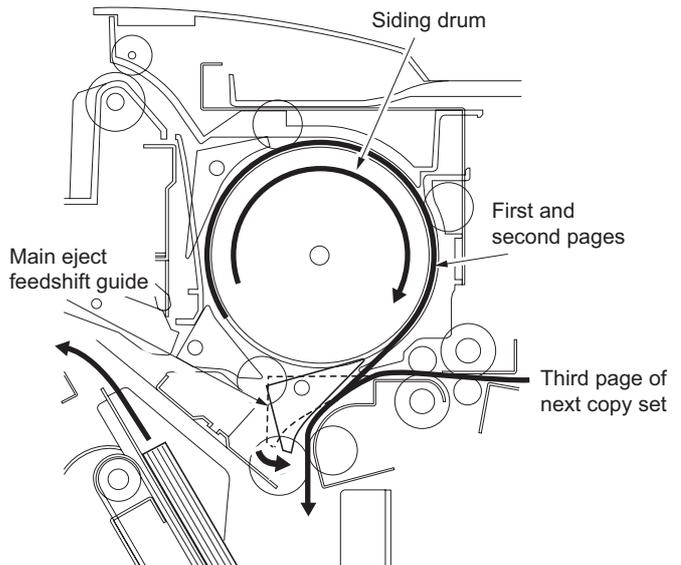
When A4/11" x 8 1/2" size paper is processed in the intermediate tray for eventual multiple sets of copies, to ensure the time for paper processing, the first and second page of the next copy set are wound around the siding drum. The wounded paper are sided there until the third page is conveyed.

1. While paper is processed in the intermediate tray, feedshift solenoid A (FSSOLA) turns on so that the sub eject feedshift guide operates.



**Figure 2-1-6**

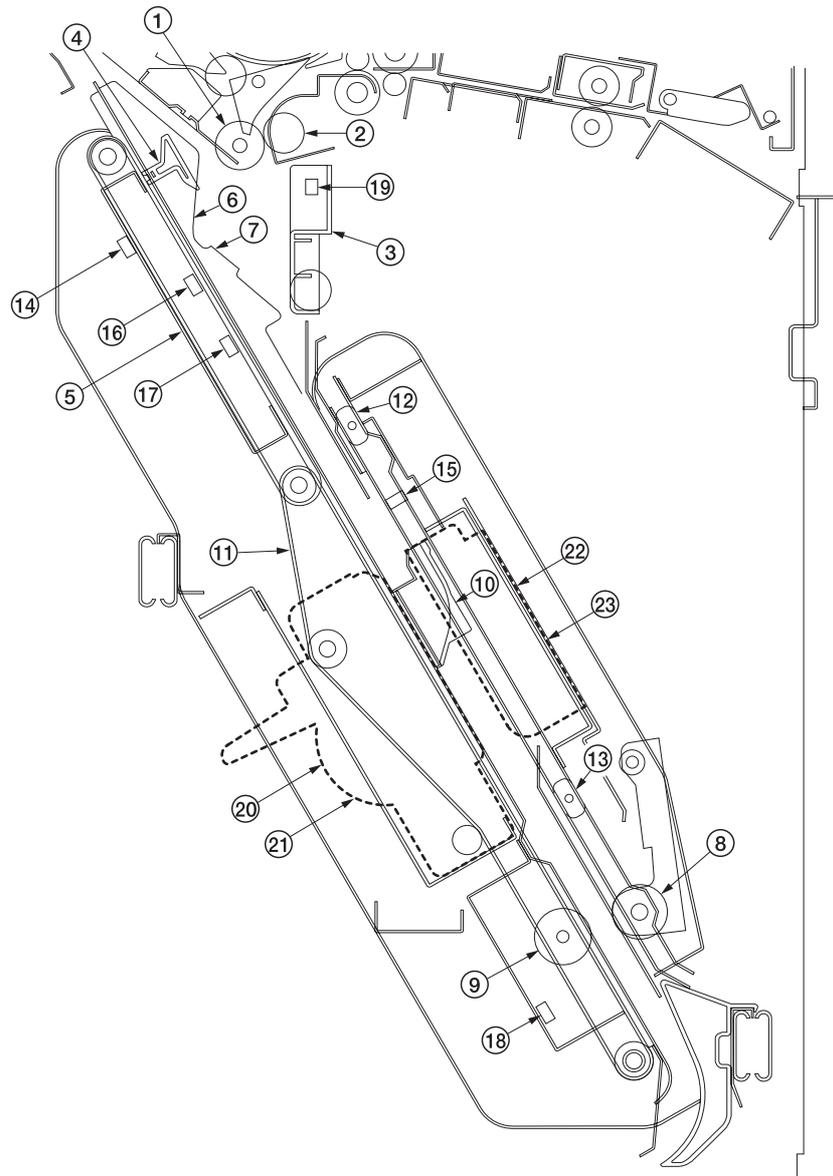
2. The siding drum motor (SDM) turns on so that the siding drum rotates and winds the first page of the next copy set around the drum. Feedshift solenoid C (FSSOLC) turns on so that the main eject feedshift guide operates.
3. When paper processing has been completed in the intermediate tray, the sided first and second pages of the next copy set is conveyed to the intermediate tray together with the third page.



**Figure 2-1-7**

### (3) Intermediate tray section

The intermediate tray section performs side identifying, eject position shifting and stapling of paper that is stacked in the tray. It then conveys paper to the main tray and centerfold unit.



**Figure 2-1-8 Intermediate tray section**

- |                                                                 |                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Intermediate tray paper entry roller                        | (15) Lower paper conveying belt home position sensor (PCBHPS-L)           |
| (2) Intermediate tray paper entry pulley                        | (16) Front upper side registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS-FU) |
| (3) Movable guide                                               | (17) Rear upper side registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS-RU)  |
| (4) Intermediate tray upper sliding plate                       | (18) Lower side registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS-L)        |
| (5) Upper paper conveying belt                                  | (19) Intermediate tray paper conveying sensor (ITPCS)                     |
| (6) Front upper side registration guide                         | (20) Front stapler driver (STD-F)                                         |
| (7) Rear upper side registration guide                          | (21) Rear stapler driver (STD-R)                                          |
| (8) Paper forwarding pulley                                     | (22) Front stapler clincher (STCLN-F)                                     |
| (9) Intermediate tray pulley                                    | (23) Rear stapler clincher (STCLN-R)                                      |
| (10) Intermediate tray lower sliding plate                      |                                                                           |
| (11) Lower paper conveying belt                                 |                                                                           |
| (12) Upper forwarding roller                                    |                                                                           |
| (13) Lower forwarding roller                                    |                                                                           |
| (14) Upper paper conveying belt home position sensor (PCBHPS-U) |                                                                           |

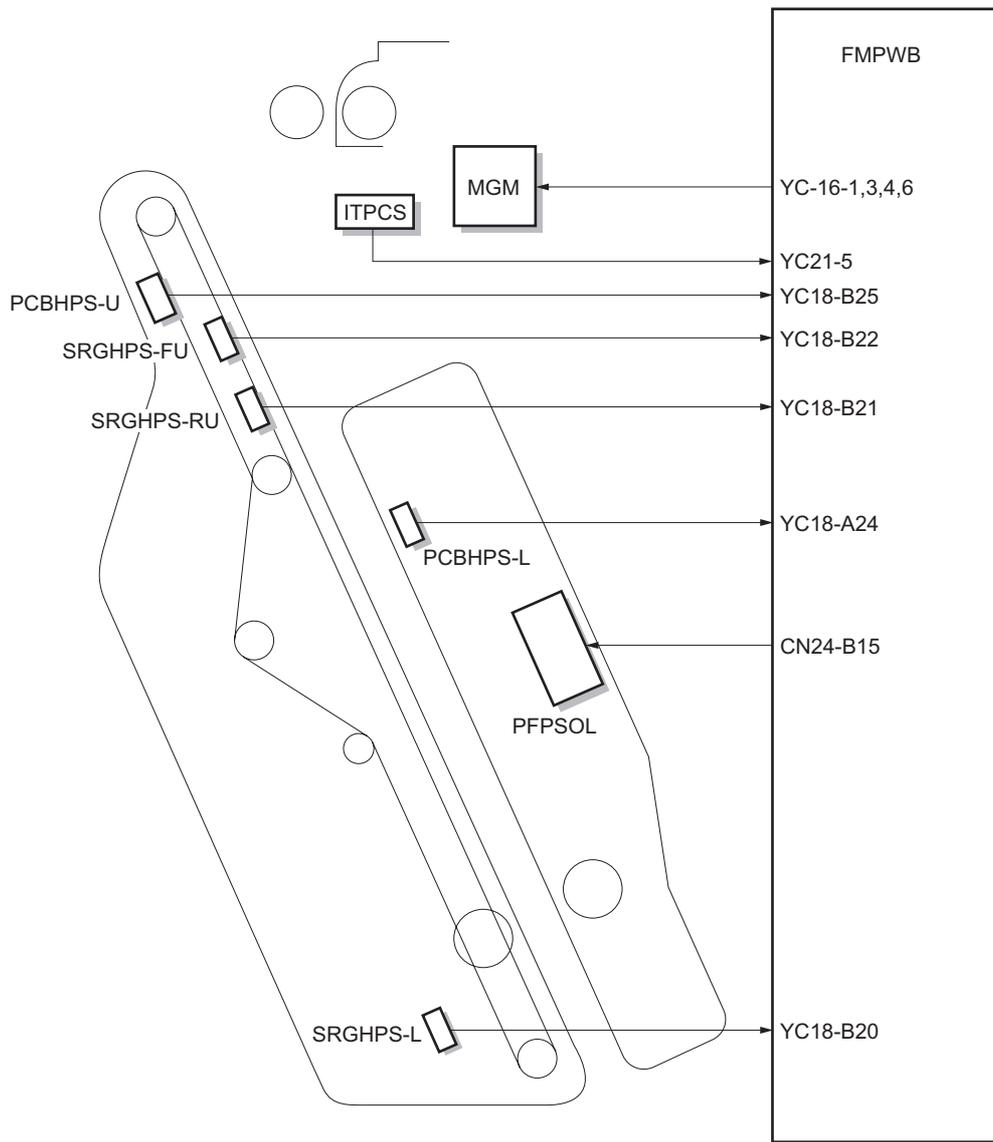


Figure 2-1-9 Block diagram of the intermediate tray section

### Paper inserting operation to the intermediate tray

Each time a sheet of paper is inserted, the below operation takes place.

1. The front/rear upper/lower side registration guides move to the paper receiving positions that are slightly outside the actual paper width according to the paper size.
- \* The front/rear lower side registration guides stay at their home positions when paper of the below sizes is used.  
A4, B5, 11" x 8 1/2"

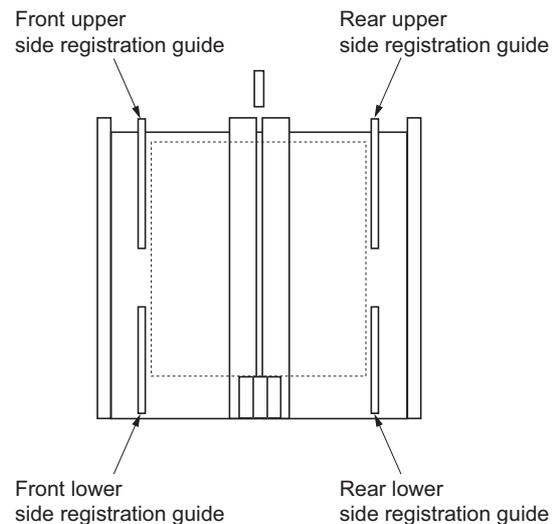


Figure 2-1-10

2. The upper paper conveying belt motor (PCBMU) rotates forward so that the intermediate tray upper sliding plate moves to the paper receiving position.
3. When paper is inserted into the intermediate tray, the movable guide motor (MGM) turns on so that the movable guide lowers and holds the paper to keep it from curling.
4. The upper paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-U) rotates backward so that the intermediate tray upper sliding plate moves to the paper holding position.

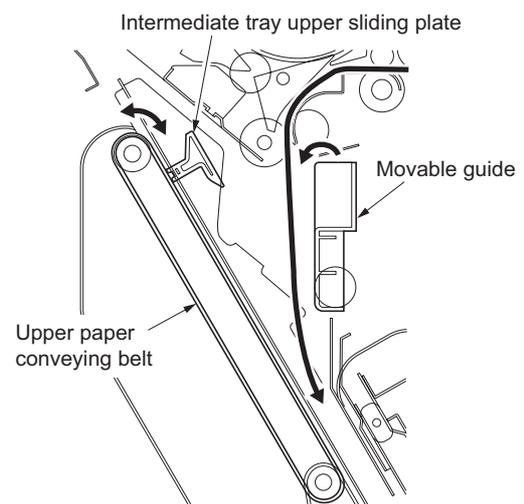


Figure 2-1-11

5. The front/rear upper/lower side registration guides move to and return from the paper size position to identify the sides of the paper.  
When the last sheet of paper is inserted, each guide stops at the paper size position.
- \* The front/rear lower side registration guides do not operate when paper of the below sizes is used.  
A4, B5, A4R, folio, 11" x 8 1/2", 8 1/2" x 11"

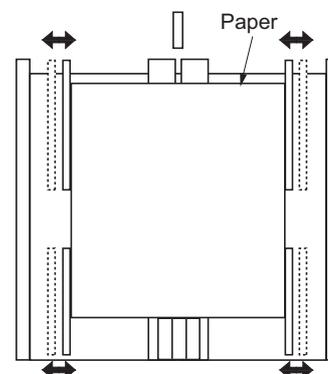
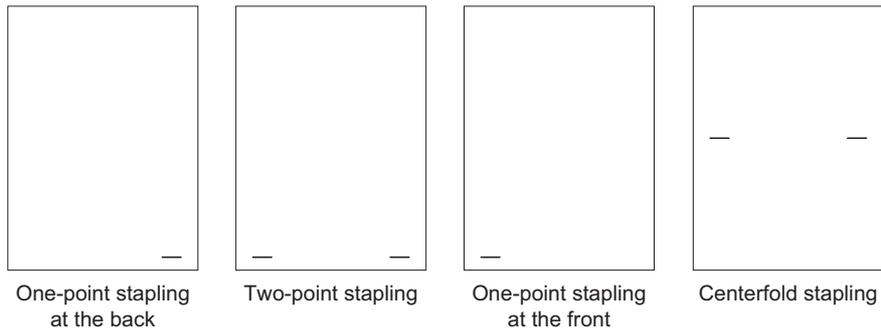


Figure 2-1-12

**Stapling operation**

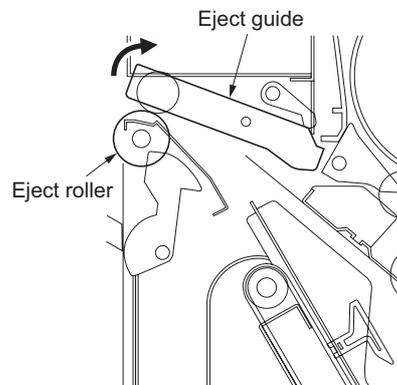
There are four types of stapling. Paper is stapled with the selected stapling type and then moved to the shifted eject position.



**Figure 2-1-13**

**One-point stapling at the back/two-point stapling/one-point stapling at the front**

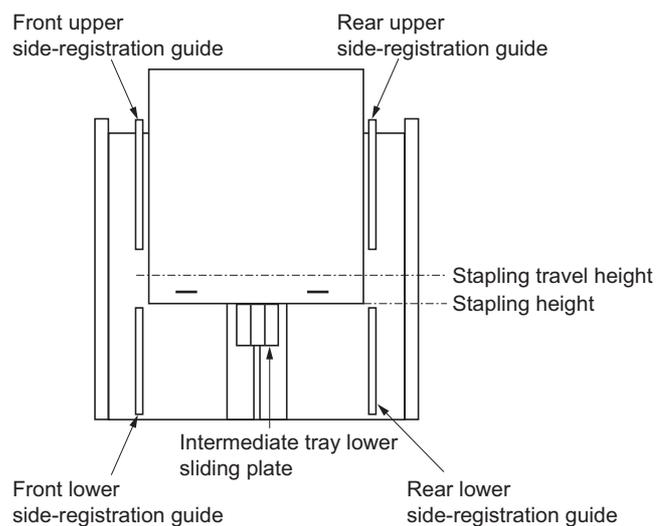
1. The eject guide solenoid (EGSOL) turns on so that the eject guide rises and prevents the paper leading edge from contacting the eject roller when paper is stapled.



**Figure 2-1-14**

2. The front/rear upper side registration guides and the front/rear lower side registration guides (for large size paper only) move to the positions that are slightly outside the actual paper width.
3. The lower paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-L) rotates forward so that the intermediate tray lower sliding plate moves upward and moves paper to the stapling travel height.
4. The front/rear lower side registration guides return to their home positions.
5. The lower paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-L) rotates backward so that the intermediate tray lower sliding plate moves downward and moves paper to the stapling height.

\* The operations described in step 1 to 5 above are not performed when A4/11" x 8 1/2" paper is used.



**Figure 2-1-15**

6. The front/rear upper side registration guides move toward the machine front or rear to move paper to the stapling position.
7. The stapler performs stapling.
8. The front/rear upper side registration guides move toward the machine front or rear to shift paper forward or backward.

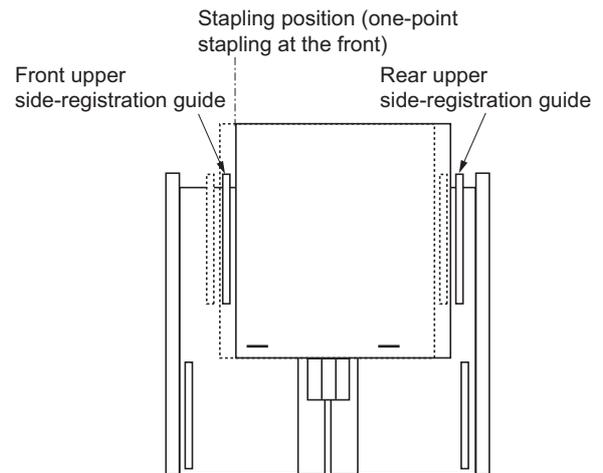


Figure 2-1-16

### Centerfold stapling

1. The eject guide solenoid (EGSOL) turns on so that the eject guide rises and prevents the paper leading edge from contacting the eject roller when paper is stapled.

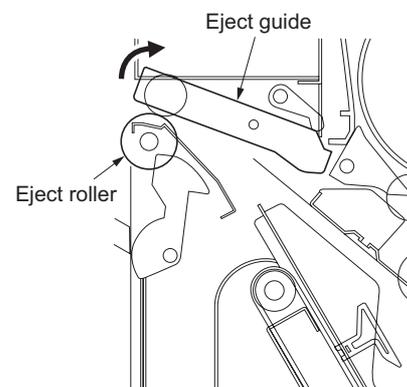


Figure 2-1-17

2. The front/rear upper side registration guides and front/rear lower side registration guides (for large size paper only) move to the positions that are slightly outside the actual paper width.
3. The upper/lower paper conveying belt motors (PCBM-U/L) rotate forward so that the intermediate tray upper/lower sliding plates move upward and move paper to the centerfold stapling height.
4. The front/rear lower side registration guides move to the paper size position and identify the sides of the paper.
5. The front/rear staplers perform two-point stapling.

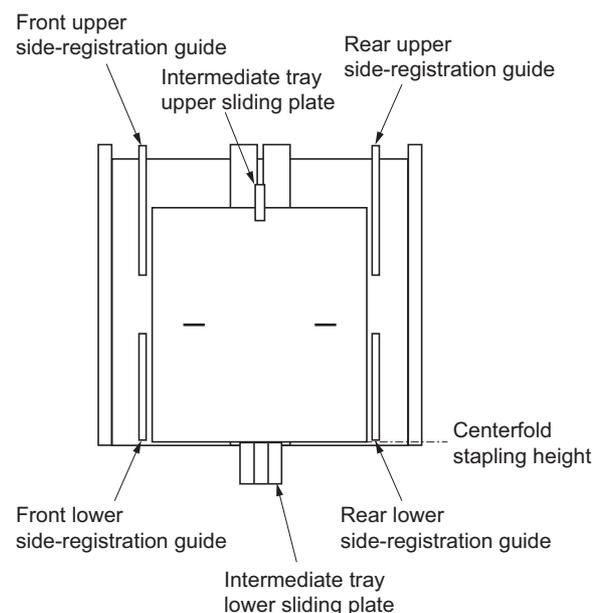
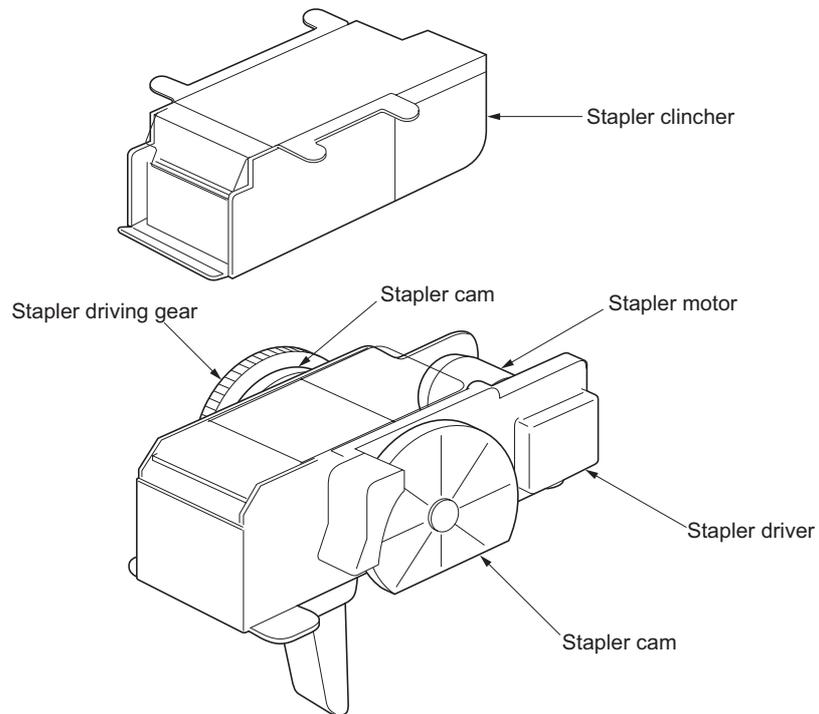


Figure 2-1-18

**Stapling operation**

The stapler is comprised of the front stapler driver, front stapler clincher, rear stapler driver and rear stapler clincher. The stapler cam that is connected to the stapler driving gear of the stapler driver rotates to drive in staples and then the stapler clincher clinches the staples.



**Figure 2-1-19**

### Paper ejection operation to the main tray

Paper is ejected from the intermediate tray to the main tray (or the optional multi job tray) by the upper/lower paper conveying belt motors (PCBM-U/L) rotating forward, which moves the intermediate tray upper/lower sliding plates upward so that the paper is pushed upward. When paper is ejected to the main tray, the eject guide solenoid (EGSOL) turns on so that the eject guide rises.

In the non-staple mode, the front/rear upper side registration guides move toward the machine front or rear to shift the paper eject position sides of the machine. Each time paper is ejected to the main tray, the paper holder solenoid (PHSOL) turns on so that the main eject holder lowers and presses the paper to the main tray so that it does not slip.

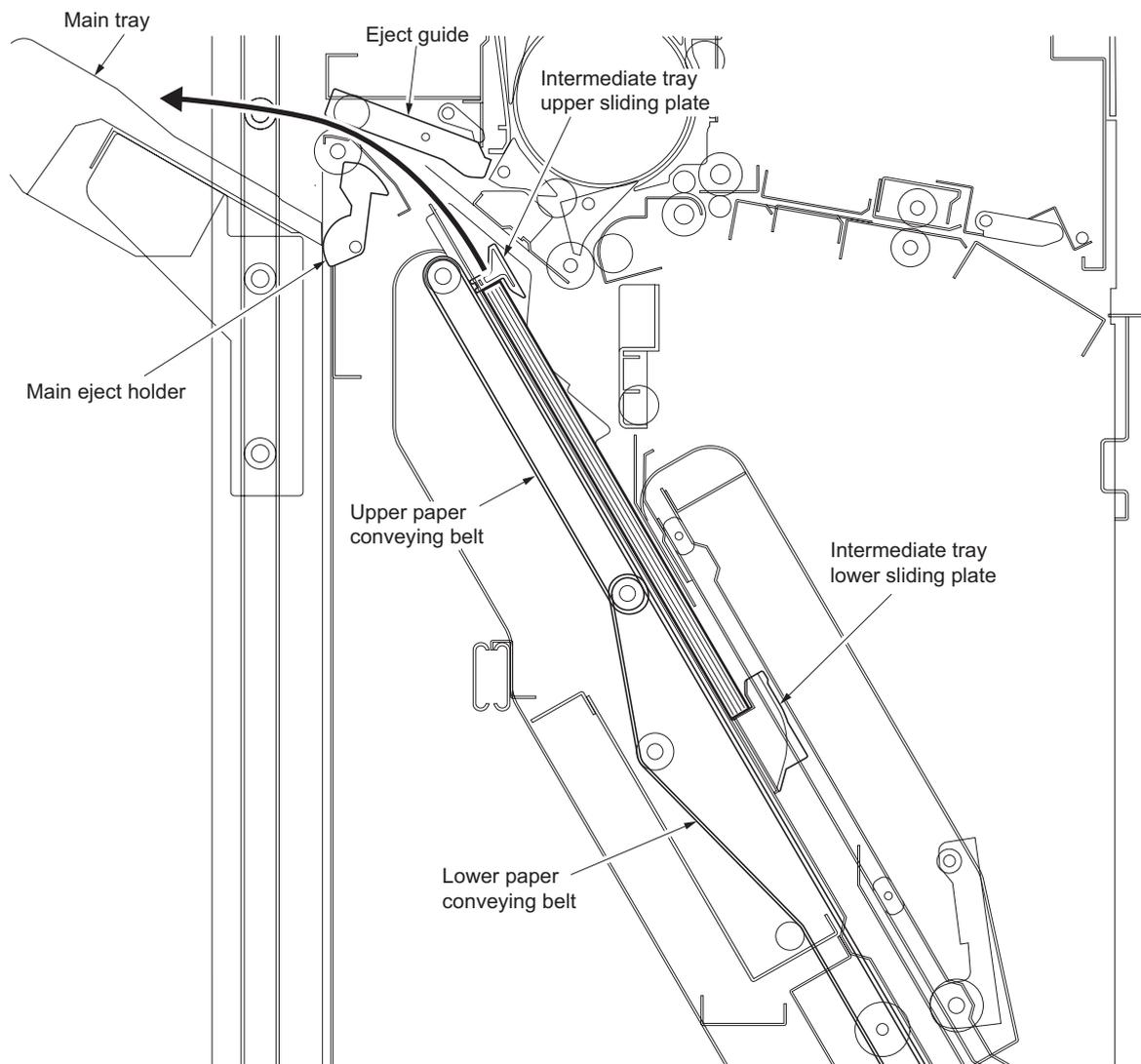
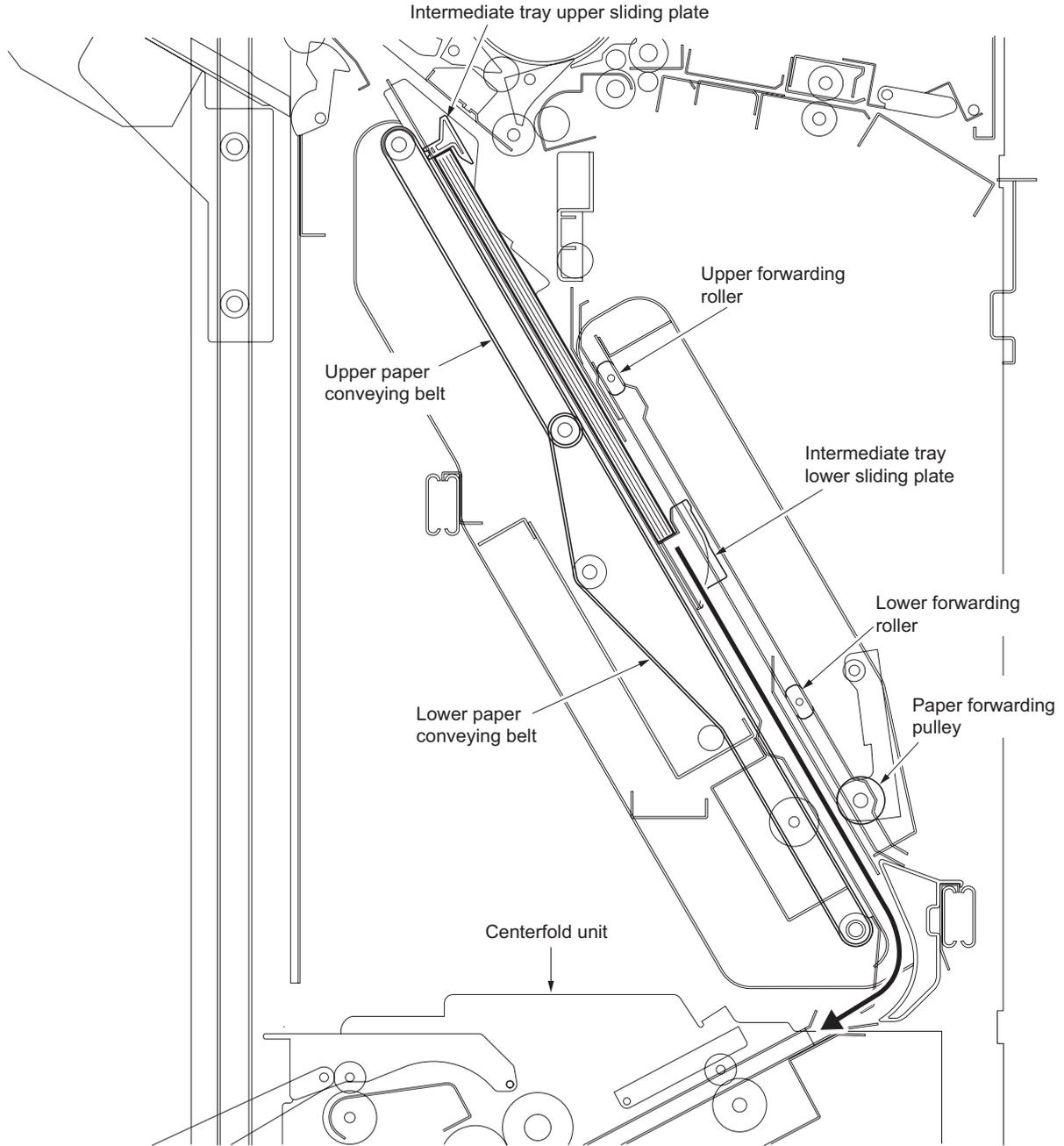


Figure 2-1-20

**Paper ejection operation to the centerfold unit**

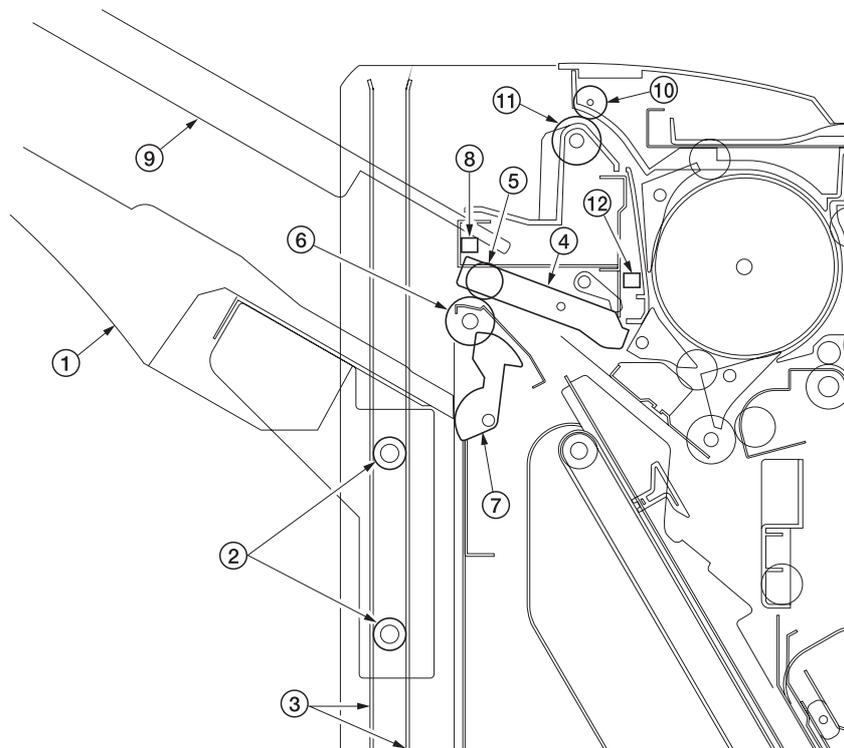
In the stitching mode, a sheet of paper that was not stapled or multiple sheets of paper that were centerfold-stapled are conveyed from the intermediate tray to the centerfold unit. Paper is ejected to the centerfold unit by the upper/lower paper conveying belt motors (PCBM-U/L) rotating backward, which moves the intermediate tray upper/lower sliding plates downward so that the paper is pushed downward. When paper is ejected to the centerfold unit, the paper forwarding pulley solenoid (PFPSOL) turns on so that the paper forwarding pulley and upper/lower forwarding rollers lower to aid paper conveyance.



**Figure 2-1-21**

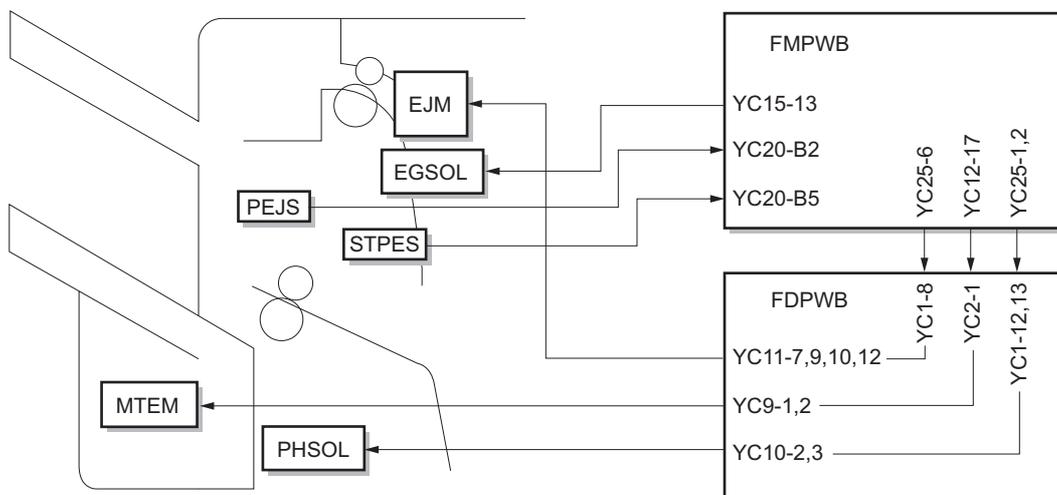
**(4) Paper eject section**

The paper eject section is comprised of the main tray eject section and sub tray eject section. In the multi finisher, paper is ejected to the main tray in the sort mode, group mode and staple mode. In the non-sort mode, paper is ejected to the sub tray, and if the number of ejected sheets of paper exceeds the sub tray capacity, the excess sheets are ejected to the main tray.



**Figure 2-1-22 Paper eject section**

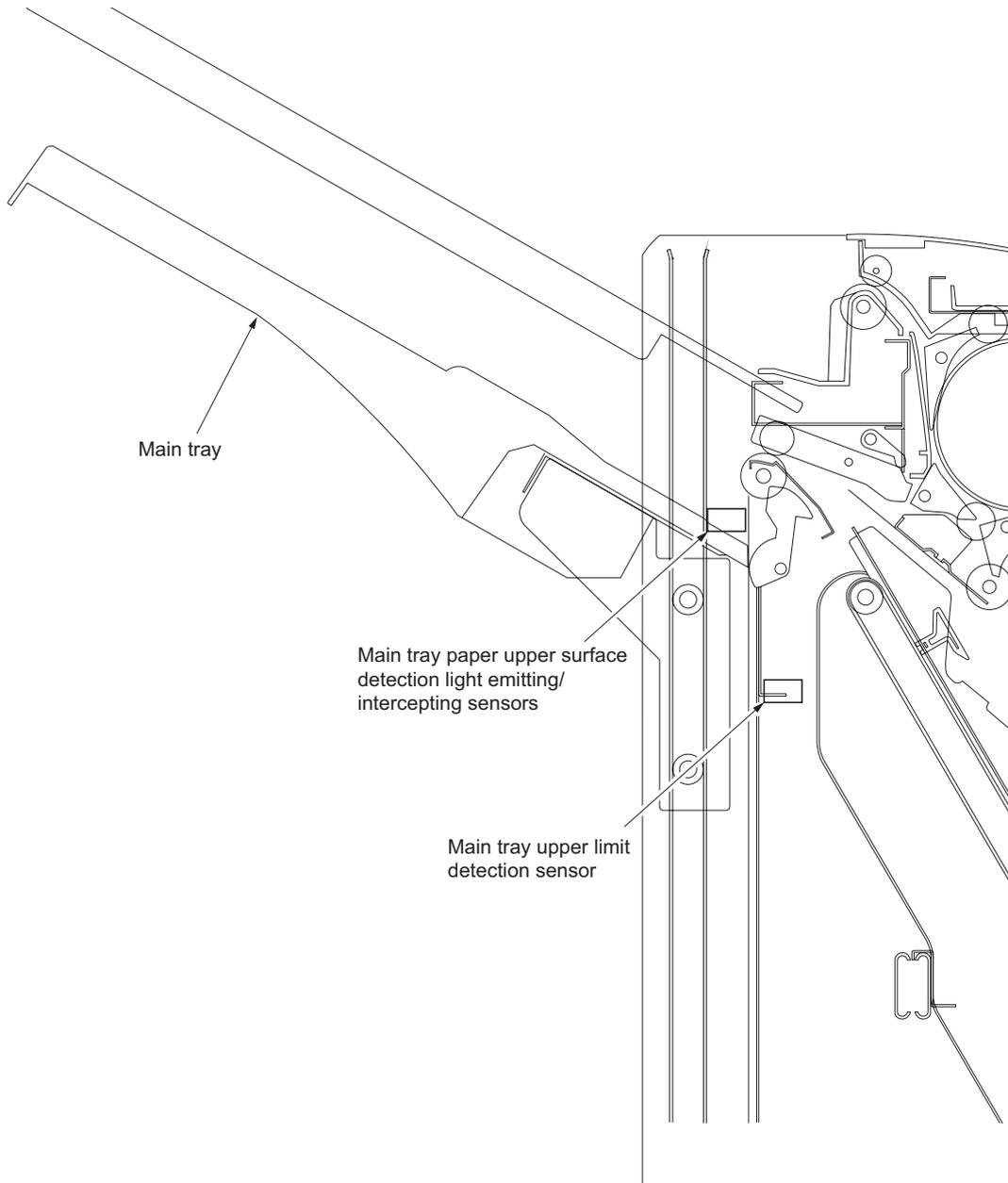
- |                      |                                          |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| (1) Main tray        | (7) Main eject holder                    |
| (2) Main tray pulley | (8) Paper ejection sensor (PEJS)         |
| (3) Main tray rail   | (9) Sub tray                             |
| (4) Eject guide      | (10) Sub tray eject pulley               |
| (5) Eject pulley     | (11) Sub tray eject roller               |
| (6) Eject roller     | (12) Sub tray paper eject sensor (STPES) |



**Figure 2-1-23 Block diagram of the paper eject section**

**Main tray elevation operation**

The main tray lowers when paper is stacked on it. Once stacking has completed and paper has been removed, the main tray rises and stops at the home position. The main tray lowers and rises by the forward and backward rotation of the main tray elevation motor (MTEM), respectively. The position of the tray while it is rising or lowering is detected by the main tray paper upper surface detection light emitting/intercepting sensors (MTPUSDLES, MTPUSDLIS) detecting the paper upper surface and the main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS) detecting the upper limit (home position) of the main tray.



**Figure 2-1-24**

### 2-1-2 Multi job tray

The multi job tray stacks paper by lowering to the position where the job tray that is pre-selected (from among Nos.1 to 5) in the printer mode is positioned at the main tray eject section.

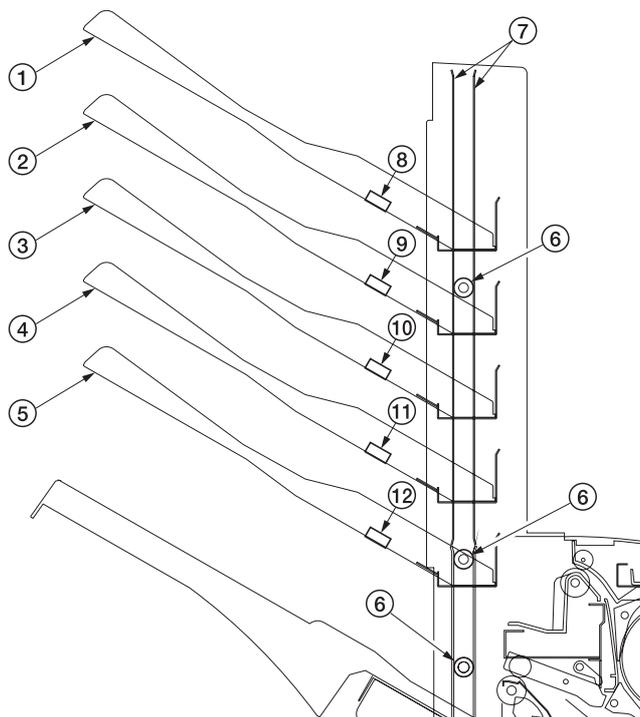


Figure 2-1-25 Multi job tray

- |                           |                                       |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Job tray No.1         | (7) Multi job tray rail               |
| (2) Job tray No.2         | (8) Paper detection switch 1 (PDSW1)  |
| (3) Job tray No.3         | (9) Paper detection switch 2 (PDSW2)  |
| (4) Job tray No.4         | (10) Paper detection switch 3 (PDSW3) |
| (5) Job tray No.5         | (11) Paper detection switch 4 (PDSW4) |
| (6) Multi job tray pulley | (12) Paper detection switch 5 (PDSW5) |

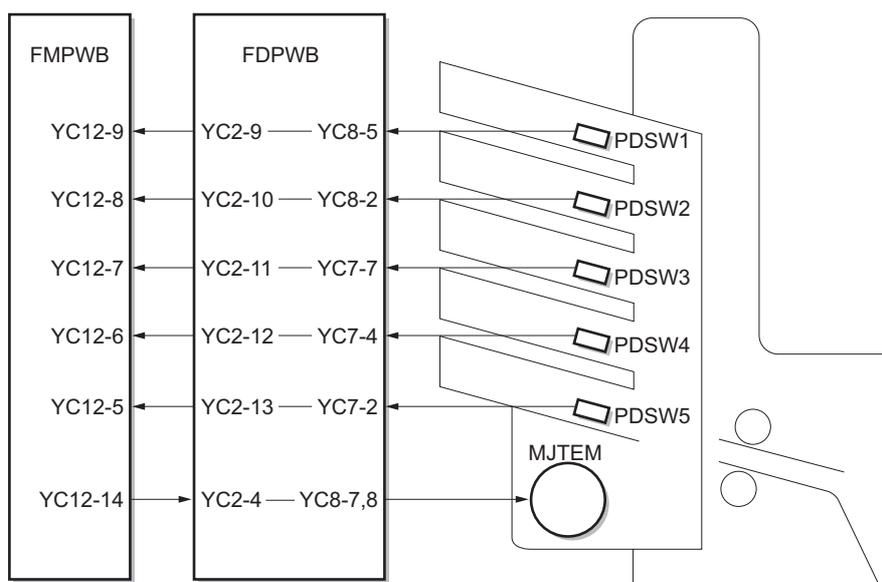
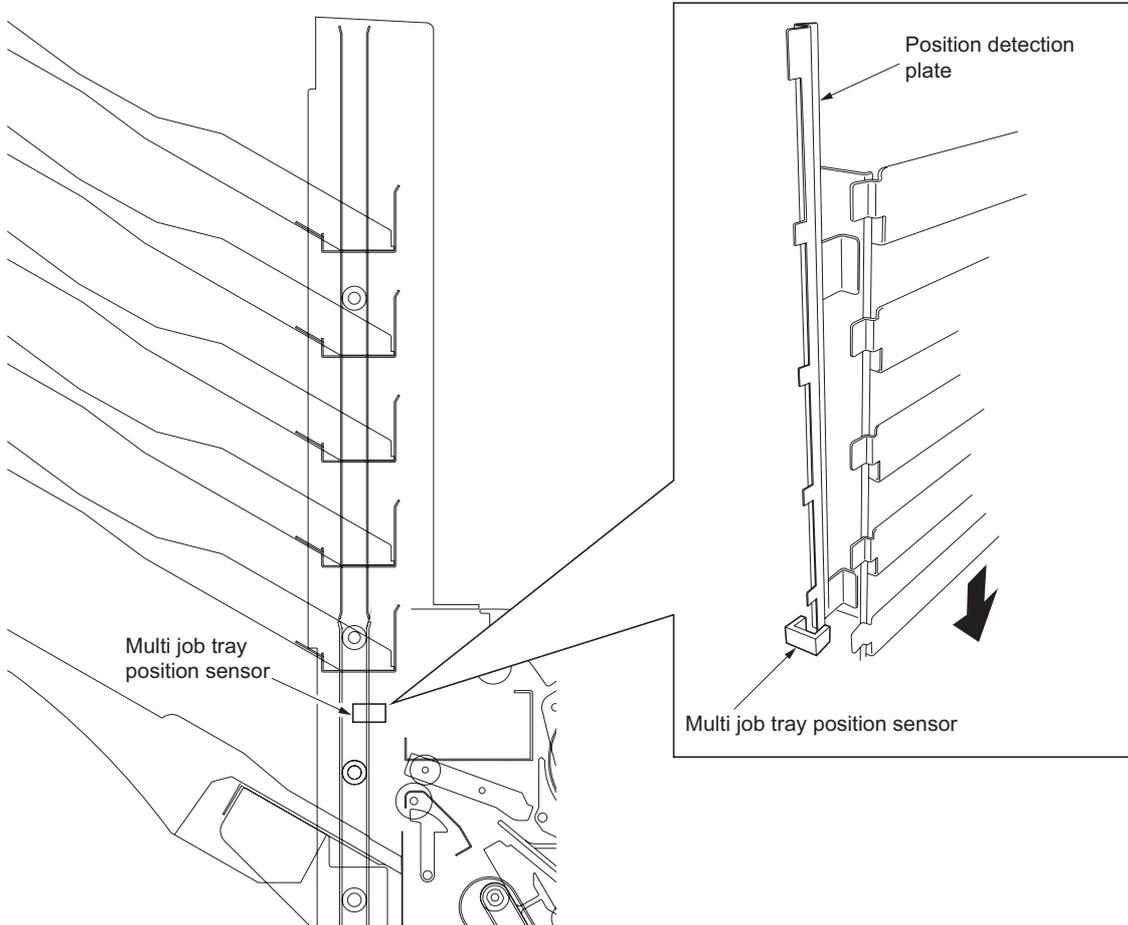


Figure 2-1-26 Block diagram of the multi job tray

**Multi job tray elevation operation**

The multi job tray lowers and rises by the forward and backward rotation of the multi job tray elevation motor (MJTEM), respectively.

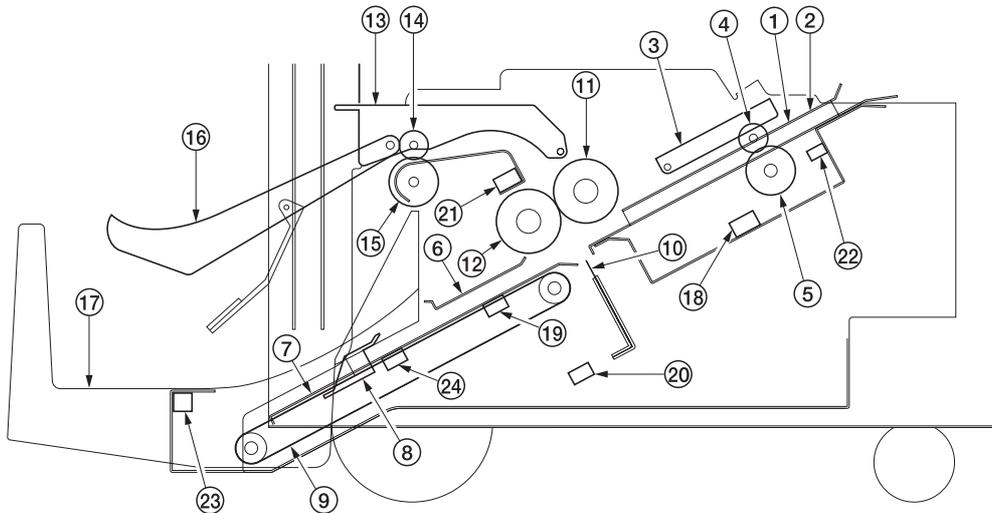
The position detection plate is attached to the front side of the multi job tray. The position of the multi job tray is detected by the number of times the multi job tray position sensor (MJTPS) is interrupted (turned on) by the position detection plate. For instance, if job tray No.3 is selected for paper ejection, the multi job tray elevation motor (MJTEM) stops to halt the multi job tray's descent so that job No.3 is at the paper ejection position when the multi job tray position sensor (MJTPS) is interrupted (turned on) three times by the position detection plate.



**Figure 2-1-27**

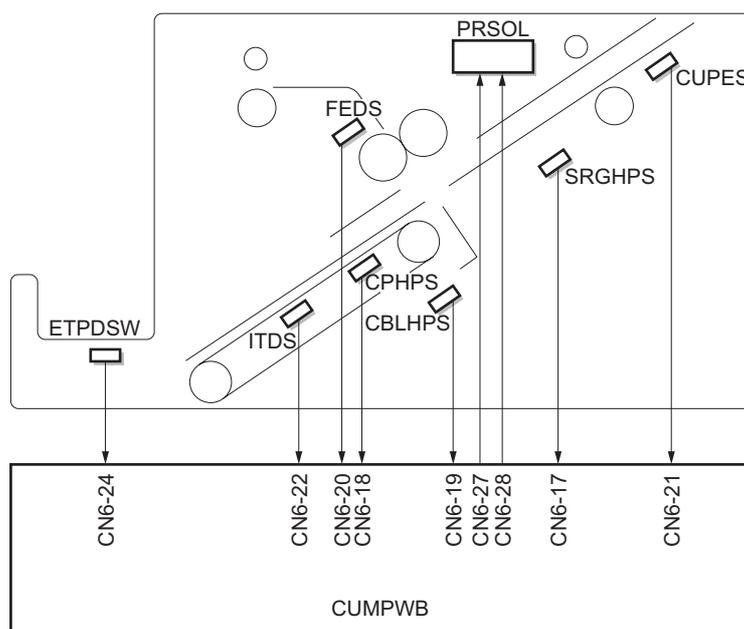
### 2-1-3 Centerfold unit

In the stitching mode, the centerfold unit folds a sheet of paper that was not stapled (multiple sheets of paper that were stapled at the center of the paper) and then ejects it (them).



**Figure 2-1-28 Centerfold unit**

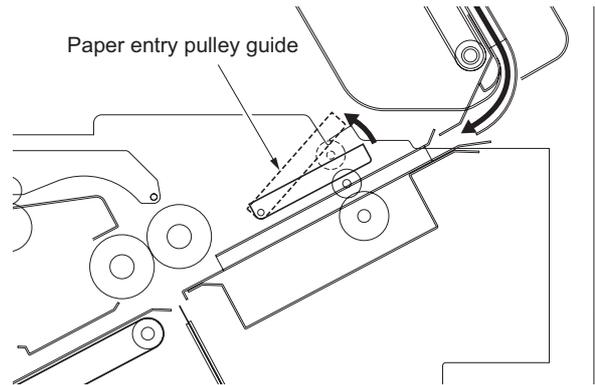
- |                                       |                                                            |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Front side registration guide     | (12) Left centerfold roller                                | (21) Folded edge detection sensor (FEDS)        |
| (2) Rear side registration guide      | (13) Upper eject guide                                     | (22) Centerfold unit paper entry sensor (CUPES) |
| (3) Paper entry pulley guide          | (14) Eject pulley                                          | (23) Eject tray paper detection switch (ETPDSW) |
| (4) Paper entry pulley                | (15) Eject roller                                          | (24) Inside tray detection sensor (ITDS)        |
| (5) Paper entry roller                | (16) Ejected paper holding arm                             |                                                 |
| (6) Upper paper conveying guide plate | (17) Storage cover                                         |                                                 |
| (7) Lower paper conveying guide plate | (18) Side registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS) |                                                 |
| (8) Centering plate                   | (19) Centering plate home position sensor (CPHPS)          |                                                 |
| (9) Paper conveying belt              | (20) Centerfold blade home position sensor (CBLHPS)        |                                                 |
| (10) Centerfold blade                 |                                                            |                                                 |
| (11) Right centerfold roller          |                                                            |                                                 |



**Figure 2-1-29 Block diagram of the centerfold unit**

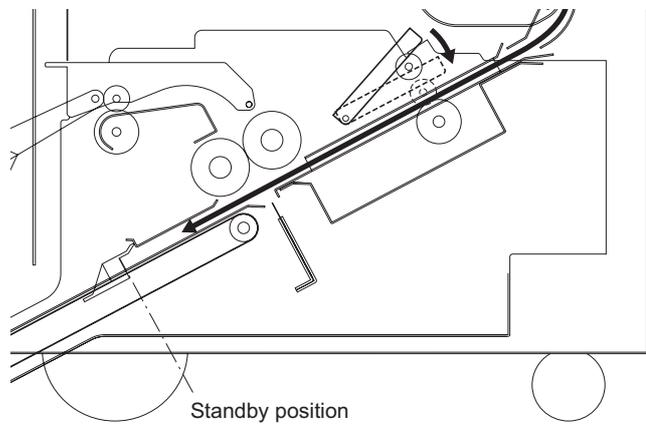
**Paper centerfold operation**

1. The pressure release solenoid (PRSOL) turns on so that the paper entry pulley guide rises.  
The unit enters the paper insertion standby state.



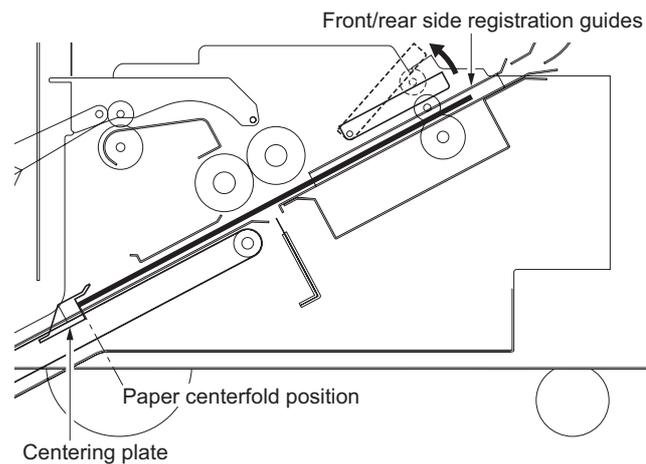
**Figure 2-1-30**

2. When paper is inserted from the intermediate tray, the pressure release solenoid (PRSOL) turns off so that the paper entry pulley guide lowers and conveys paper to the standby position.



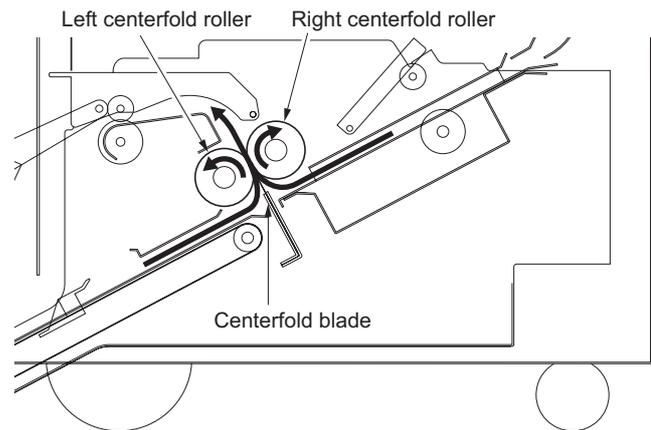
**Figure 2-1-31**

3. The pressure release solenoid (PRSOL) turns on so that the paper entry pulley guide rises.
4. The centering plate moves from the standby position (home position) to the centerfold position suited to the paper size.
5. The front/rear side registration guides identify the paper sides.



**Figure 2-1-32**

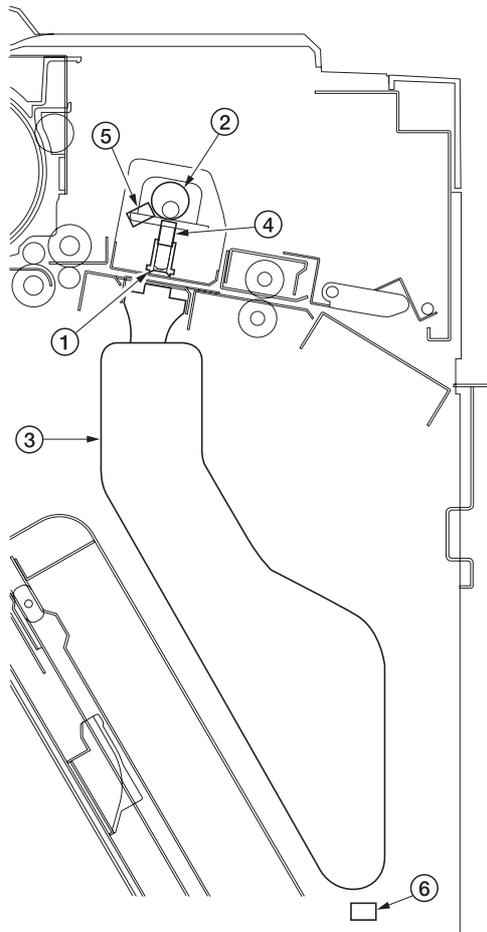
6. The centerfold blade pushes up the paper at the center and the paper is inserted between the right/left centerfold rollers.
7. Folded paper is ejected to the storage cover.



**Figure 2-1-33**

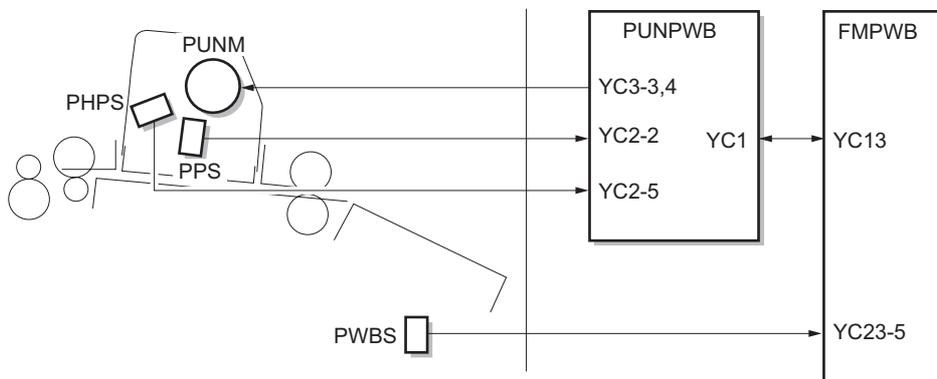
**2-1-4 Punch unit**

The punch unit is installed on the paper insertion section of the finisher. It stops paper conveyance and punches paper.



**Figure 2-1-34 Punch unit**

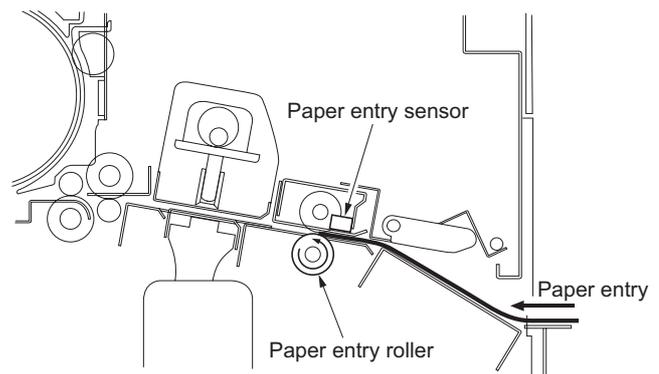
- |                     |                                       |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Punch cutter    | (4) Punch pulse sensor (PPS)          |
| (2) Punch cam       | (5) Punch home position sensor (PHPS) |
| (3) Punch waste box | (6) Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)     |



**Figure 2-1-35 Block diagram of the punch unit**

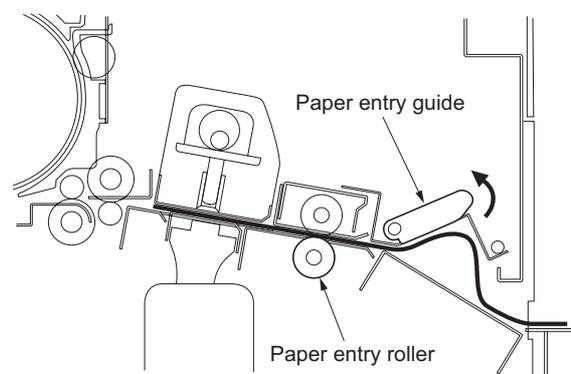
## Punching operation

1. In the punch mode, the paper is fed out to the finisher. The paper entry motor (PEM) will be activated in a certain period of time after the paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on. The paper entry roller will be rotated.
- \* Attaching the paper to the paper entry roller for a certain period of time prevents skewed feeding.



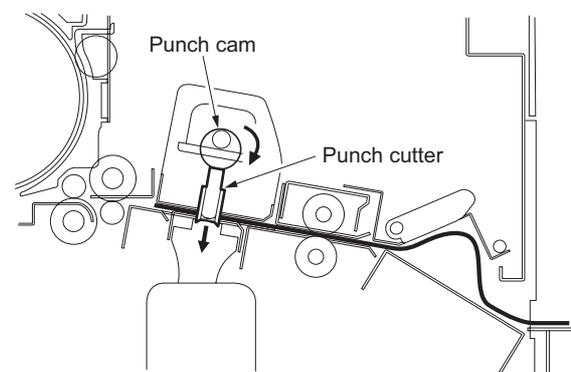
**Figure 2-1-36**

2. The paper rotated by the paper entry roller is fed to the punch position and stops at once. The rotation of the paper entry guide provides the paper curve.



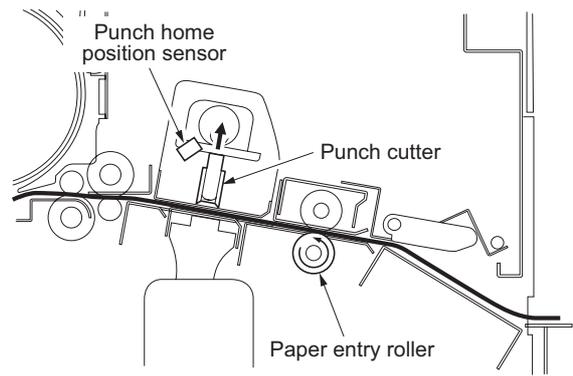
**Figure 2-1-37**

3. 10 msec before the paper entry roller stops, the punch motor (PUNM) will be activated to rotate the punch cam. The punch cutter descended by the rotation of the punch cam punches holes on the paper.



**Figure 2-1-38**

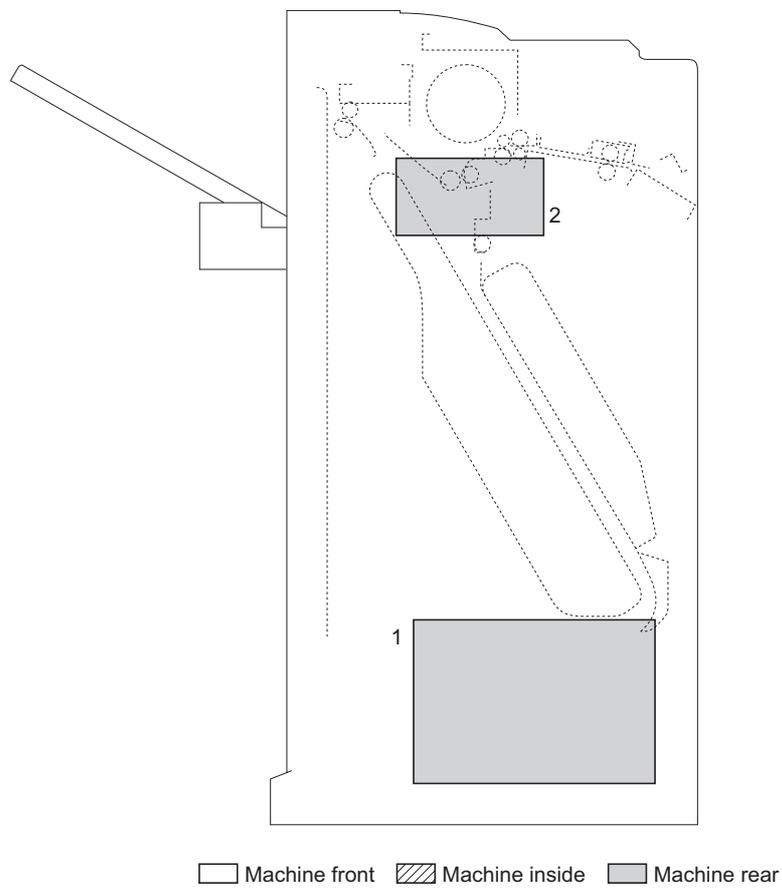
4. The punch cutter ascends. The punch home position sensor (PHPS) detects the home position to stop the punch. The paper entry roller rotates to convey the paper to the feedshift section.



**Figure 2-1-39**

**2-2-1 Electrical parts layout**

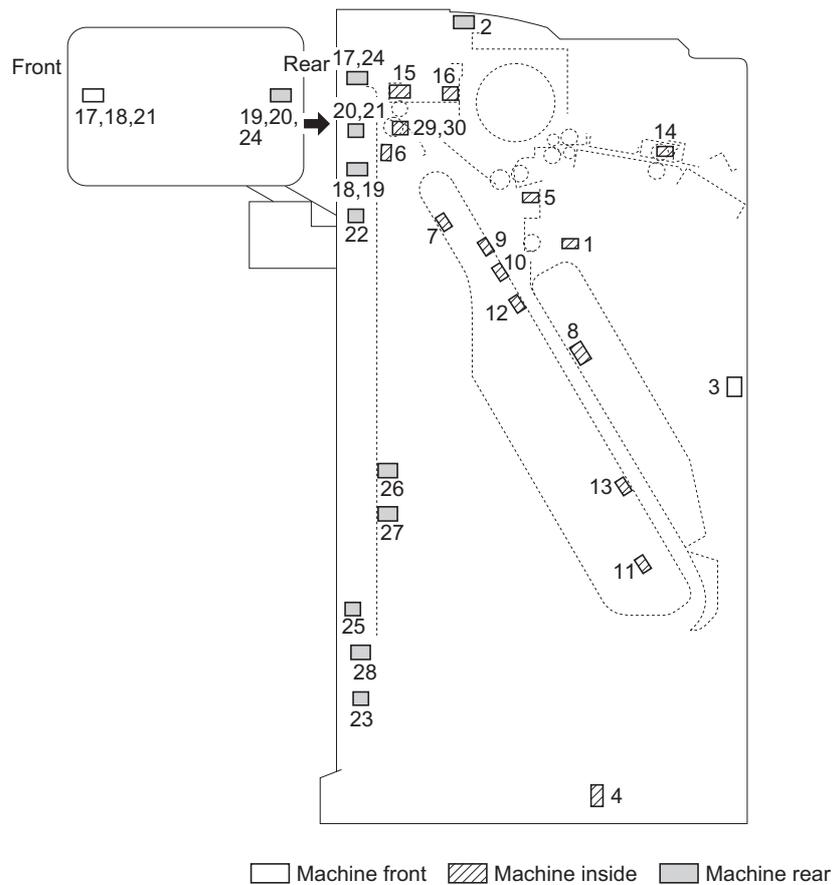
**(1) PWBs (finisher)**



**Figure 2-2-1 PWBs**

1. Finisher main PWB (FMPWB) ..... Controls electric components of finisher.
2. Finisher drive PWB (FDPWB)..... Controls each motor and solenoid.

**(2) Switches and sensors (finisher)**

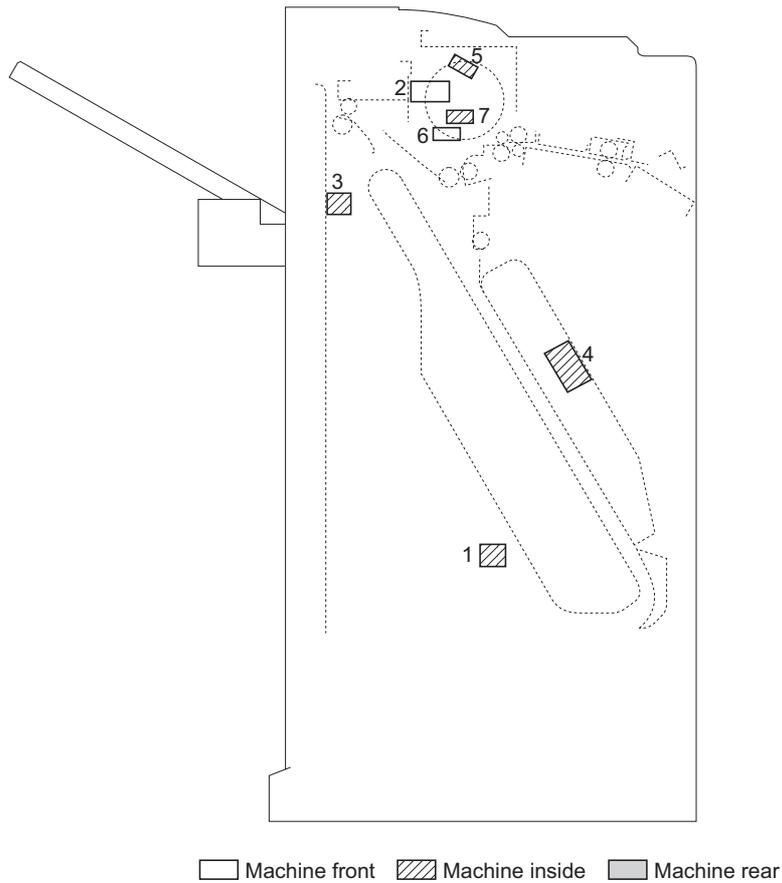


**Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors**

1. Movable guide  
home position sensor (MGHPS) ..... Detection of movable guide in home position.
2. Upper cover switch (UCSW) ..... Detection of opening/closing of the upper cover.
3. Front cover switch (FCSW) ..... Detection of opening/closing of the front cover.
4. Centerfold unit set switch (CUSSW) ..... Detection of connection to the optional centerfold unit.
5. Intermediate tray  
paper conveying sensor (ITPCS) ..... Detection of paper jam in the intermediate tray.
6. Paper holder detection sensor (PHDS) ..... Detection of paper jam in the main tray eject section.
7. Upper paper conveying belt  
home position sensor (PCBHPS-U) ..... Detection of upper paper conveying belt in home position.
8. Lower paper conveying belt  
home position sensor (PCBHPS-L) ..... Detection of lower paper conveying belt in home position.
9. Front upper side registration guide  
home position sensor (SRGHPS-FU) ..... Detection of front upper side registration guide in home position.
10. Rear upper side registration guide  
home position sensor (SRGHPS-RU) ..... Detection of rear upper side registration guide in home position.
11. Lower side registration guide  
home position sensor (SRGHPS-L) ..... Detection of front/rear lower side registration guides in home position.
12. Upper paper sensor (PS-U) ..... Detection of paper in the intermediate tray upper section.
13. Lower paper sensor (PS-L) ..... Detection of paper in the intermediate tray lower section.
14. Paper entry sensor (PES) ..... Detection of paper insertion and paper jam in the finisher.
15. Paper ejection sensor (PEJS) ..... Detection of paper ejection and paper jam.
16. Sub tray paper ejection sensor (STPES) ..... Detection of paper ejection to and paper jam in the sub tray.
17. Multi job tray position sensor (MJTPS) ..... Detection of optional multi job tray position.
18. Main tray paper upper surface detection  
light emitting sensor (MTPUSDLES) ..... Detection of upper surface of paper in the main tray.

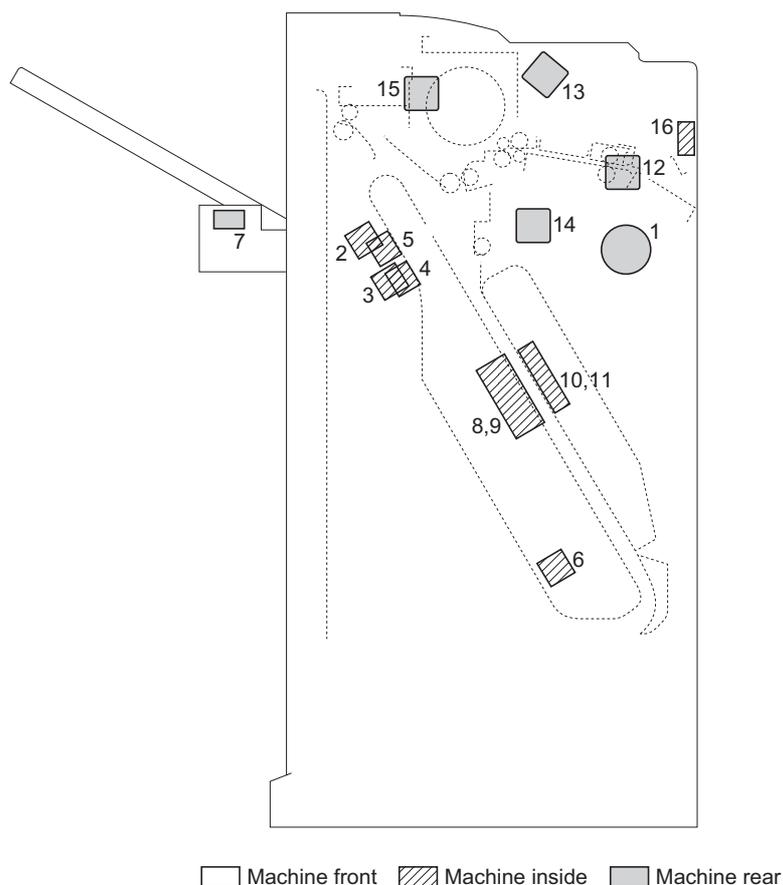
19. Main tray paper upper surface detection  
light intercepting sensor (MTPUSDLIS) ..... Detection of upper surface of paper in the main tray.
20. Multi job tray paper upper surface detection  
light emitting sensor (MJTPUSDLES) ..... Detection of paper overflow in the optional multi job tray.
21. Multi job tray paper upper surface detection  
light intercepting sensor (MJTPUSDLIS) ..... Detection of paper overflow in the optional multi job tray.
22. Main tray upper limit  
detection sensor (MTULDS) ..... Detection of the main tray ascent position.
23. Main tray lower limit  
detection sensor (MTLLDS) ..... Detection of the main tray descent position.
24. Multi job tray upper limit  
detection sensor (MJTULDS) ..... Detection of the optional multi job tray ascent position.
25. Multi job tray lower limit  
detection sensor (MJTLLDS) ..... Detection of the optional multi job tray descent position.
26. Main tray load 1000  
detection sensor (MTLDS-10) ..... Detection of the paper load in the main tray.
27. Main tray load 1500  
detection sensor (MTLDS-15) ..... Detection of the paper load in the main tray.
28. Main tray load 3000  
detection sensor (MTLDS-30) ..... Detection of the paper load in the main tray.
29. Multi job tray front switch (MJTSW-F) ..... Safety stop of optional multi job tray.
30. Multi job tray rear switch (MJTSW-R) ..... Safety stop of optional multi job tray.

**(3) Clutches and solenoids (finisher)**



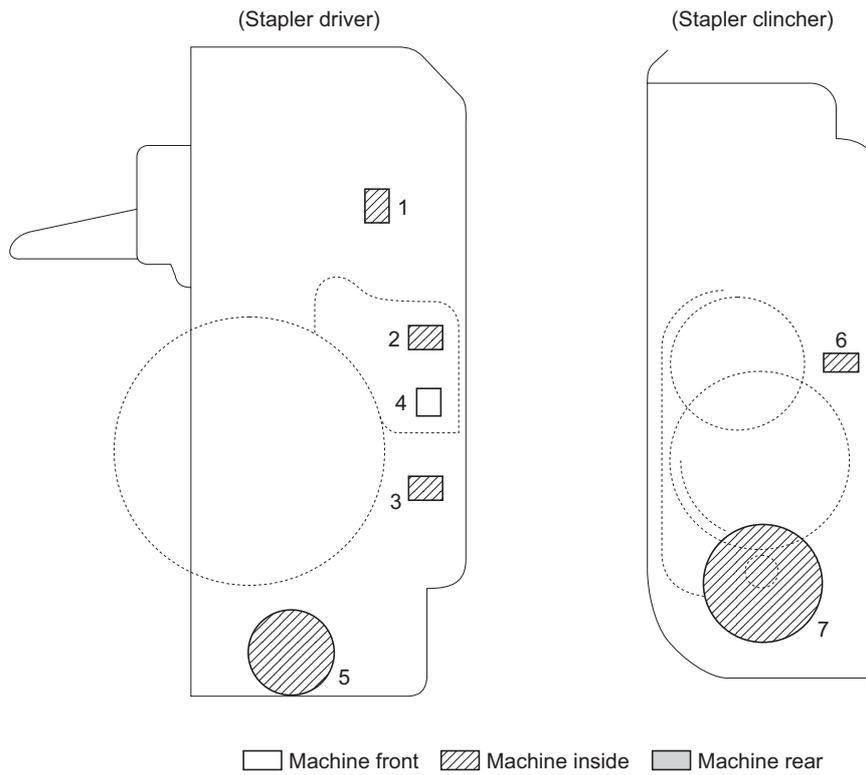
**Figure 2-2-3 Clutches and solenoids**

- 1. Lock solenoid (LSOL) ..... Operates the intermediate tray holder.
- 2. Eject guide solenoid (EGSOL) ..... Operates eject guide.
- 3. Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL) ..... Operates main eject holder.
- 4. Paper forwarding pulley solenoid (PFPSOL) ..... Forwards paper to the optional centerfold unit.
- 5. Feedshift solenoid A (FSSOLA) ..... Operates sub eject feedshift guide.
- 6. Feedshift solenoid B (FSSOLB) ..... Operates main eject feedshift guide.
- 7. Feedshift solenoid C (FSSOLC) ..... Operates left feedshift guide.

**(4) Motors and others (finisher)****Figure 2-2-4 Motors and others**

- |     |                                                          |                                             |
|-----|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1.  | Paper conveying motor (PCM).....                         | Drives paper conveying section.             |
| 2.  | Upper paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-U) .....          | Drives upper paper conveying belt.          |
| 3.  | Lower paper conveying belt motor (PCBM-L).....           | Drives lower paper conveying belt.          |
| 4.  | Front upper side registration guide motor (SRGM-FU)..... | Drives front upper side registration guide. |
| 5.  | Rear upper side registration guide motor (SRGM-RU) ..... | Drives rear upper side registration guide.  |
| 6.  | Lower side registration guide motor (SRGM-L) .....       | Drives lower side registration guide.       |
| 7.  | Main tray elevation motor (MTEM).....                    | Raises/Lowers the main tray.                |
| 8.  | Front stapler driver (STD-F).....                        | Staples paper.                              |
| 9.  | Rear stapler driver (STD-R) .....                        | Staples paper.                              |
| 10. | Front stapler clincher (STCLN-F).....                    | Clinches staples.                           |
| 11. | Rear stapler clincher (STCLN-R) .....                    | Clinches staples.                           |
| 12. | Paper entry motor (PEM) .....                            | Drives the paper entry roller.              |
| 13. | Siding drum motor (SDM) .....                            | Drives the siding motor.                    |
| 14. | Movable guide motor (MGM) .....                          | Drives the movable guide.                   |
| 15. | Eject motor (EJM) .....                                  | Drives the eject roller.                    |
| 16. | Cooling fan motor (CFM) .....                            | Cools the finisher inside.                  |

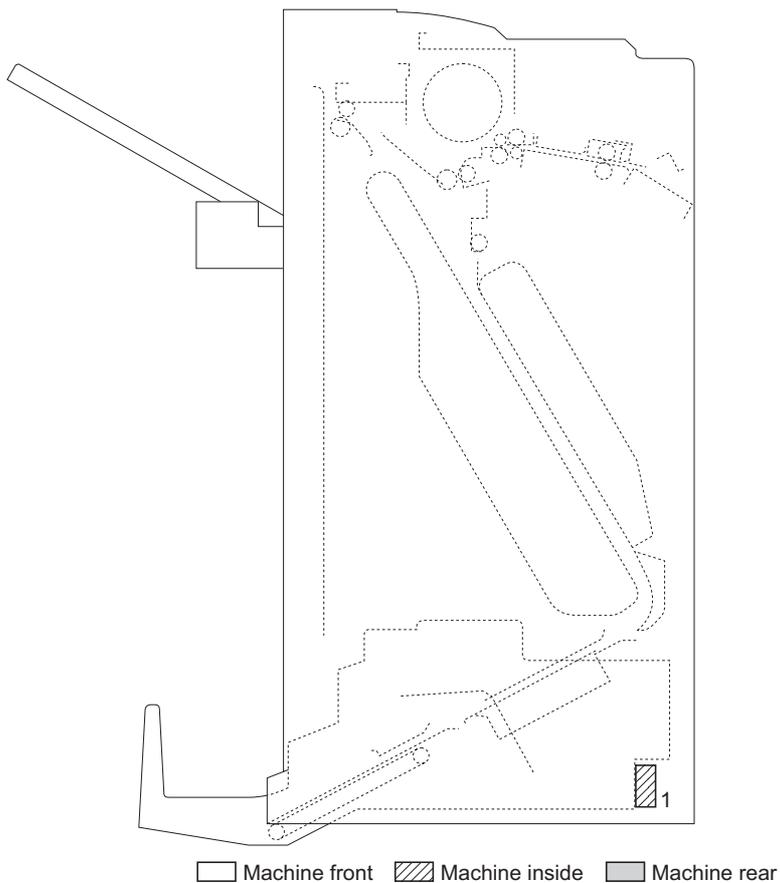
**(5) Stapler**



**Figure 2-2-5 Stapler (Front/Rear stapler drivers, Front/Rear clinchers)**

1. Front/Rear stapler empty sensor (STES-F/R) ..... Detection of when specific stapler out of staples.
2. Front/Rear stapler cartridge sensor (STCS-F/R) ..... Detection of whether specific staple cartridge is installed or not.
3. Front/Rear stapler home position sensor (STHPS-F/R) ..... Detection of specific stapler in home position.
4. Front/Rear clincher start sensor (CLNSS-F/R) ..... Drives clincher.
5. Front/Rear stapler motor (STM-F/R) ..... Drives specific stapler (driver).
6. Front/Rear clincher home position sensor (CLNHPS-F/R) ..... Detection of specific clincher in home position.
7. Front/Rear clincher motor (CLNM-F/R) ..... Drives specific clincher.

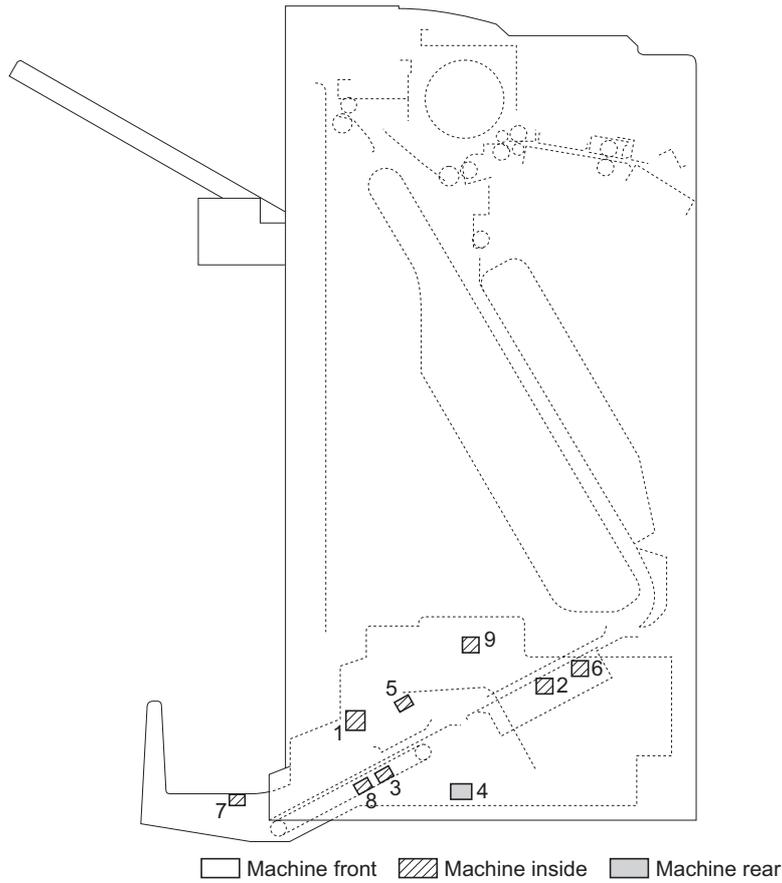
(6) PWBs (optional centerfold unit)



**Figure 2-2-6 PWBs**

1. Centerfold unit main PWB (CUMPWB)..... Controls electric components of centerfold unit.

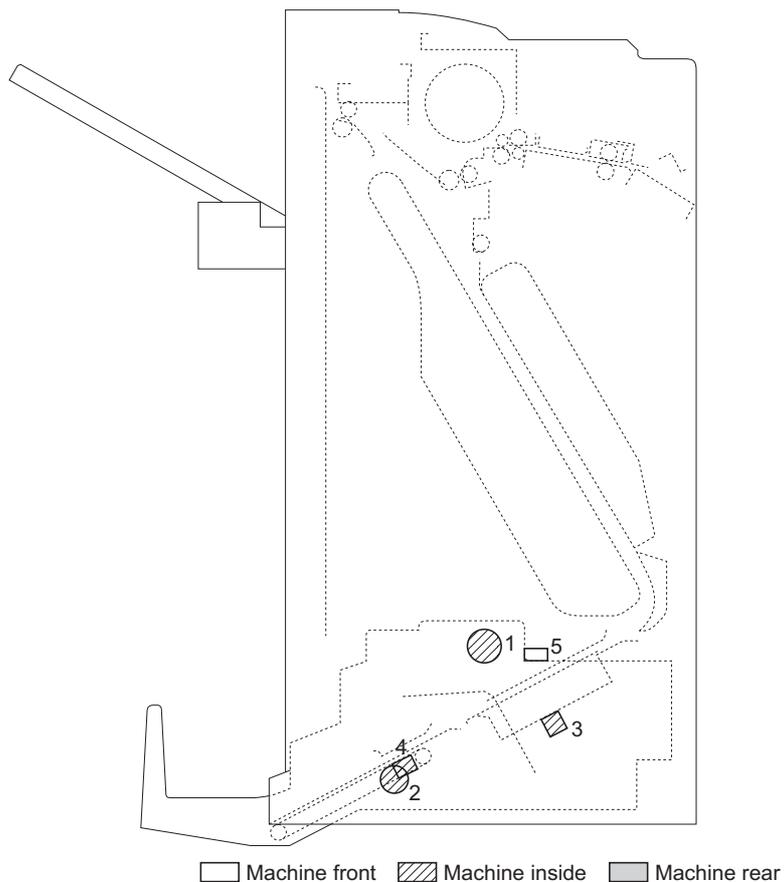
**(7) Switches and sensors (optional centerfold unit)**



**Figure 2-2-7 Switches and sensors**

- 1. Eject tray detection switch (ETDSW) ..... Detection of whether storage cover is installed or not.
- 2. Side registration guide home position sensor (SRGHPS) ..... Detection of front/rear side registration guides in home position.
- 3. Centering plate home position sensor (CPHPS) ..... Detection of centering plate in home position.
- 4. Centerfold blade home position sensor (CBLHPS) ..... Detection of centerfold blade in home position.
- 5. Folded edge detection sensor (FEDS)..... Detection of folded edge of paper.
- 6. Centerfold unit paper entry sensor (CUPES) ..... Detection of paper insertion into the centerfold unit.
- 7. Eject tray paper detection switch (ETPDSW)..... Detection of paper in the storage cover.
- 8. Inside tray detection sensor (ITDS) ..... Detection of paper in the inside tray.
- 9. Motor pulse sensor (MPS) ..... Detection of main motor pulse.

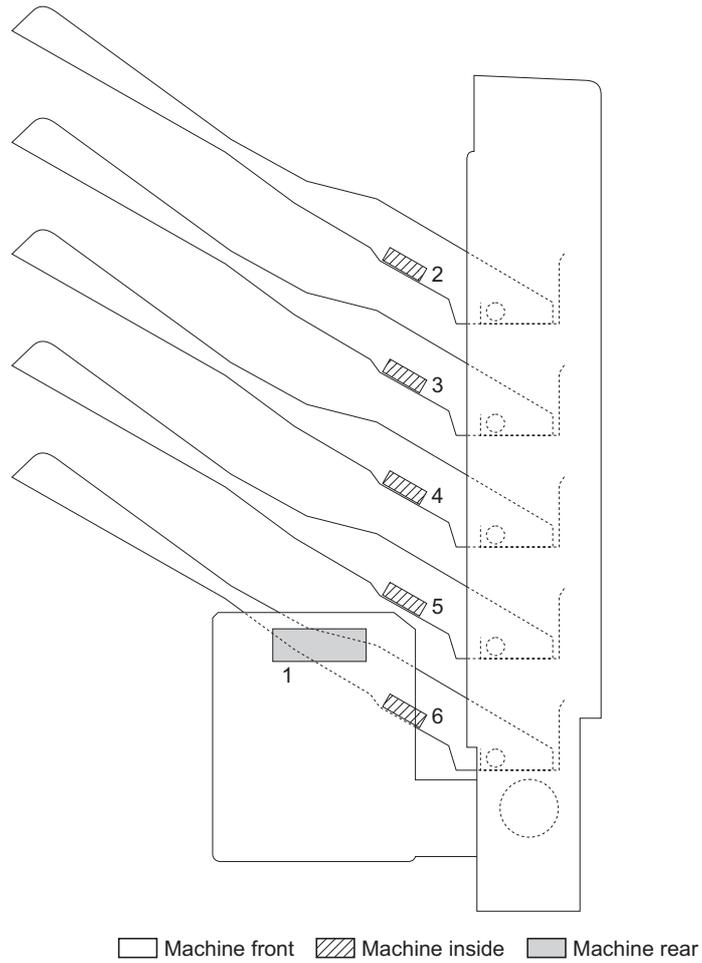
**(8) Motors and solenoids (optional centerfold unit)**



**Figure 2-2-8 Motors and solenoids**

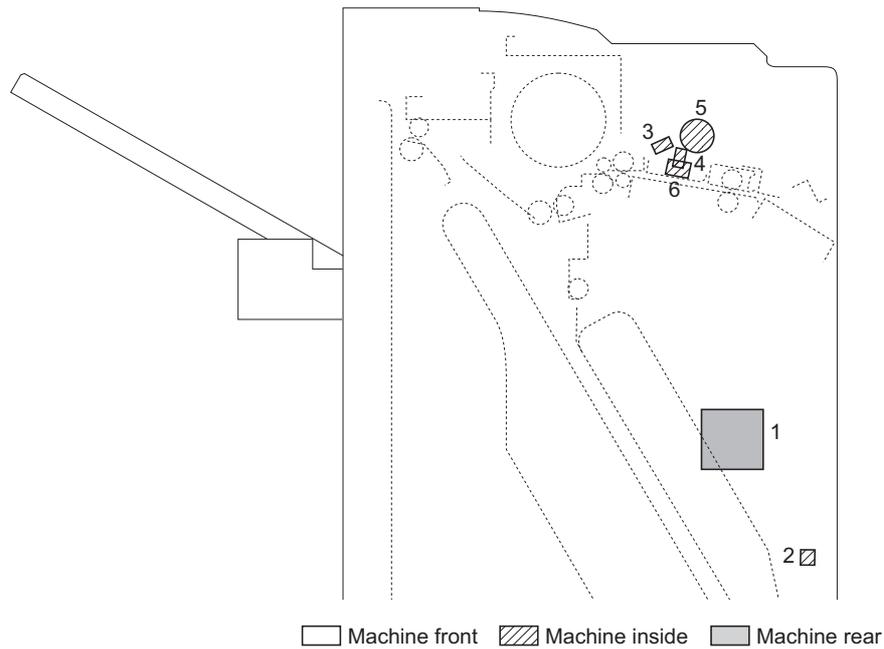
- 1. Main motor (MM)..... Drives the paper conveying section.
- 2. Centerfold blade motor (CBLM)..... Drives centerfold blade.
- 3. Side registration guide motor (SRGM)..... Drives front/rear side registration guides.
- 4. Centering plate motor (CPM)..... Drives centering plate.
- 5. Pressures release solenoid (PRSOL)..... Operates paper entry pulley guide.

**(9) Switches and motors (optional multi job tray)**



**Figure 2-2-9**

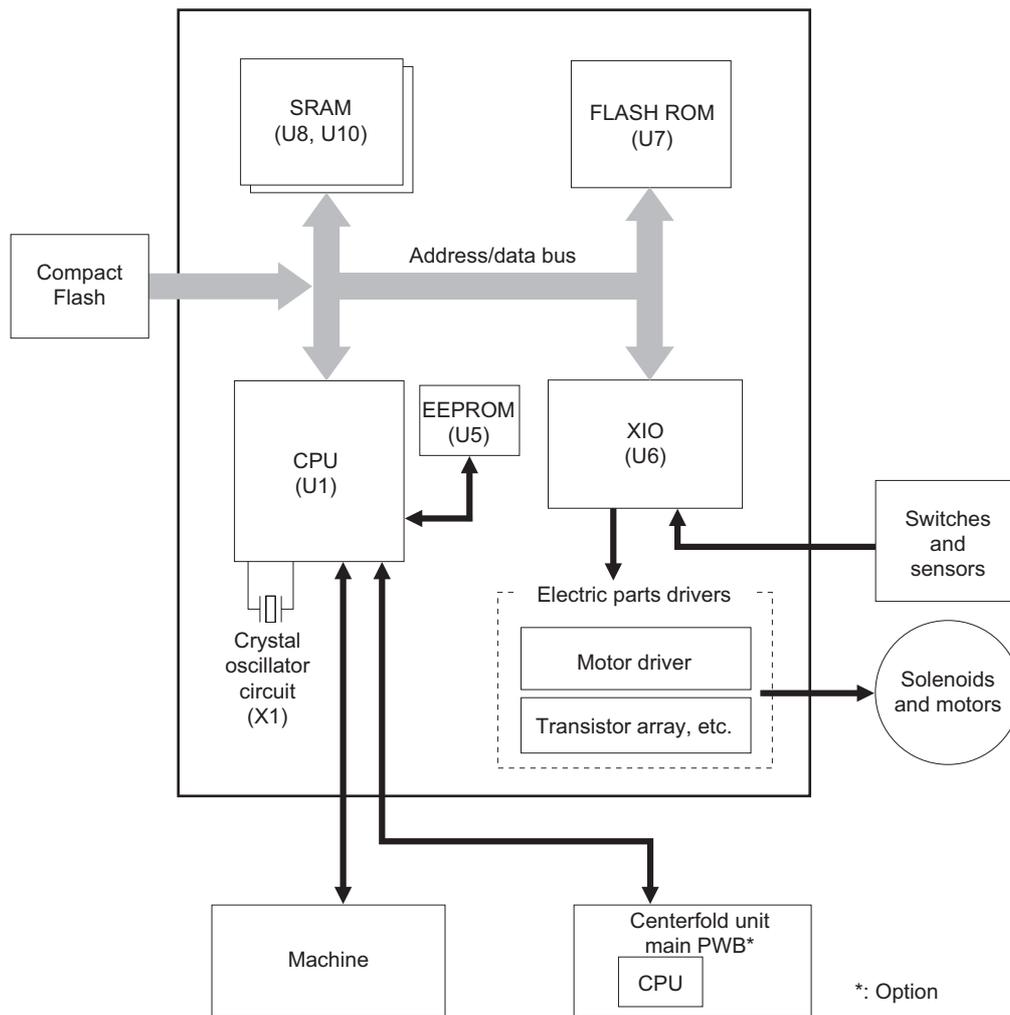
1. Multi job tray elevation motor (MJTEM) ..... Raises/Lowers the multi job tray.
2. Paper detection switch 1 (PDSW1)..... Detection of paper in job tray No. 1.
3. Paper detection switch 2 (PDSW2)..... Detection of paper in job tray No. 2.
4. Paper detection switch 3 (PDSW3)..... Detection of paper in job tray No. 3.
5. Paper detection switch 4 (PDSW4)..... Detection of paper in job tray No. 4.
6. Paper detection switch 5 (PDSW5)..... Detection of paper in job tray No. 5.

**(10) Switches and motors (optional punch unit)****Figure 2-2-10 Switches and motors**

1. Punch PWB (PUNPWB) ..... Controls electric components of punch unit.
2. Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)..... Detection of whether punch waste box is installed or not.
3. Punch home position sensor (PHPS) ..... Detection of punch cam in home position.
4. Punch pulse sensor (PPS)..... Controls the rotation of punch cam.
5. Punch motor (PUNM)..... Drives punching.
6. Punch solenoid (PUNSOL) ..... Switches the position.

This page is intentionally left blank.

## 2-3-1 Finisher main PWB



**Figure 2-3-1 Block diagram of the finisher main PWB**

The finisher main PWB (FMPWB) includes the CPU, EEPROM and, SRAM, ASIC and FLASH ROM. It controls each device as well as the entire finisher according to the program in the EEPROM. The EEPROM contains the control program that is executed by the SRAM. The ASIC is the extension I/O.

The machine and the finisher are controlled sequentially. The CPU of the finisher main PWB (FMPWB) controls the entire finisher in line with communications with the machine. Though the finisher uses a different control PWB from the one for the optional centerfold unit, operations are synchronized using the communication IC (UART).

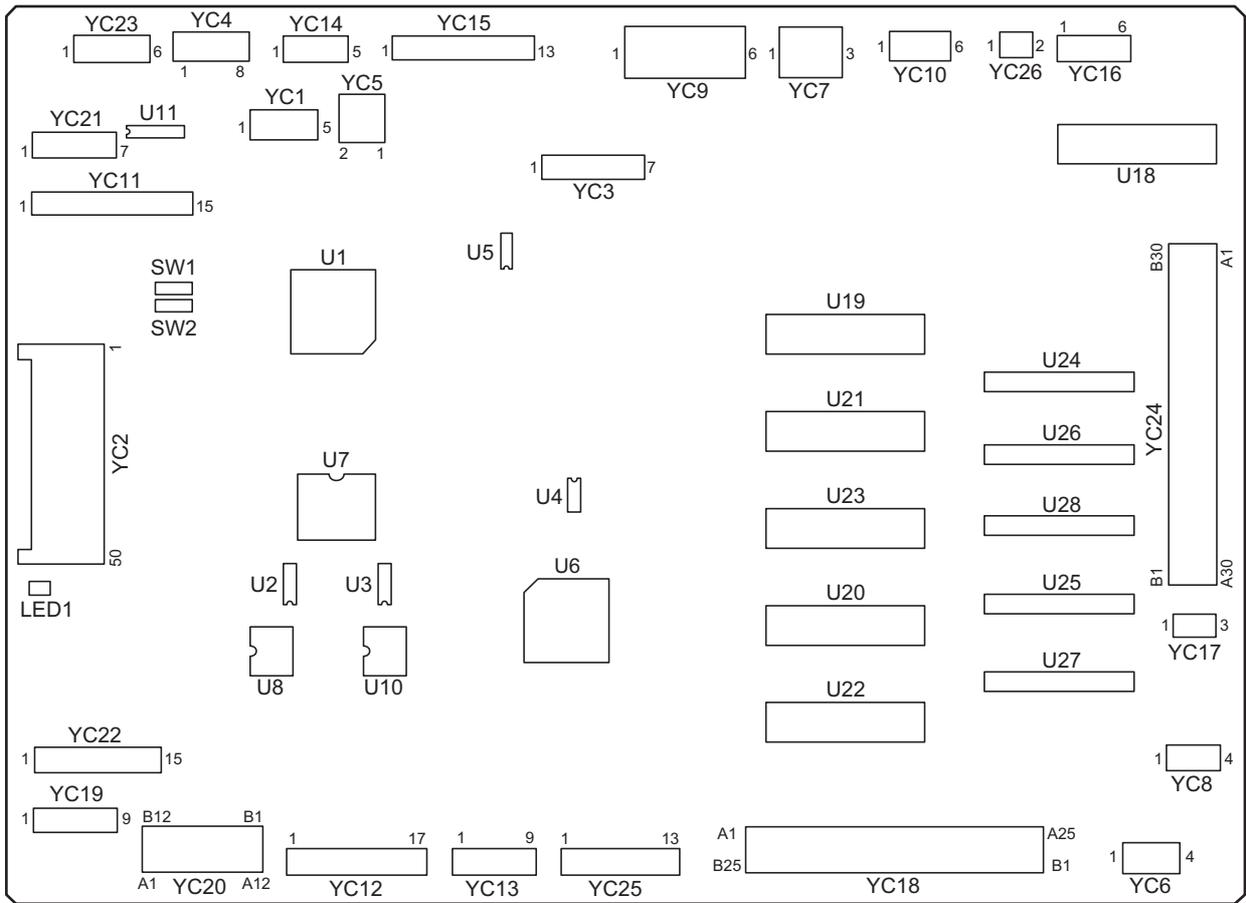


Figure 2-3-2 Finisher main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4	1	SI RDY	O	0/5 V DC	SI RDY signal to the machine
Connected to the machine	2	DF RDY	O	0/5 V DC	DF RDY signal to the machine
	3	SI SEL	I	0/5 V DC	SI SEL signal from the machine
	4	DF SEL	I	0/5 V DC	DF SEL signal from the machine
	5	SCLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	SCLK signal from the machine
	6	SDO	O	0/5 V DC	SDO signal to the machine
	7	SDI	I	0/5 V DC	SDI signal from the machine
	8	DETECTION	O	0/5 V DC	DETECTION signal to the machine
YC6	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
Connected to the front cover switch	2	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	3	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	4	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
YC7	1	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
Connected to the machine	2	PG	-	-	Power ground
	3	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
YC8	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
Connected to the finisher drive PWB	2	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	3	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	4	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
YC9	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
Connected to the finisher drive PWB and punch PWB	2	PG	-	-	Power ground
	3	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	4	PG	-	-	Power ground
	5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	YC10	1	SG	-	-
Connected to the machine	2	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	3	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	5	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	6	SG	-	-	Signal ground
YC11	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Connected to the centerfold unit and centerfold unit set switch	2	CUSSW	I	0/5 V DC	Centerfold unit set switch On/Off
	3	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	4	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	5	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	6	PG	-	-	Power ground
	7	PG	-	-	Power ground
	8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	9	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	10	TxD	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Centerfold unit communication signal
	11	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	12	RxD	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Centerfold unit communication signal
	13	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	14	RESET	O	0/5 V DC	Centerfold unit RESET signal
	15	DETECTION	I	0/5 V DC	Centerfold unit detection signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC12 Connected to the fin- isher drive PWB	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	3	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	5	PDSW5	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 5 On/Off
	6	PDSW4	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 4 On/Off
	7	PDSW3	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 3 On/Off
	8	PDSW2	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 2 On/Off
	9	PDSW1	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 1 On/Off
	10	DETECTION	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray detection signal
	11	PHDS	I	0/5 V DC	Paper holder detection sensor On/Off
	12	MODE	O	0/24 V DC	Multi job tray elevation motor drive control signal
	13	CW/CCW	O	0/24 V DC	Multi job tray elevation motor drive control signal
	14	REM	O	0/24 V DC	Multi job tray elevation motor On/Off
	15	MODE	O	0/24 V DC	Main tray elevation motor drive control signal
	16	CW/CCW	O	0/24 V DC	Main tray elevation motor drive control signal
	17	REM	O	0/24 V DC	Main tray elevation motor On/Off
YC13 Connected to the punch PWB	1	EESDA	O	0/5 V DC	Punch unit EESDA signal
	2	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Punch unit EESCLK signal
	3	REM-C	O	0/5 V DC	Punch unit REM-C signal
	4	REM-I	O	0/5 V DC	Punch unit REM-I signal
	5	REDAY	I	0/5 V DC	Punch unit REDAY signal
	6	ERROR	I	0/5 V DC	Punch unit ERROR signal
	7	DETECTION	I	0/5 V DC	Punch unit detection signal
	8	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC14 Connected to the paper conveying motor	1	24VR	O	0/24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	PG	-	-	Power ground
	3	PCM	O	0/24 V DC	Paper conveying motor on/off
	4	LOCK	I	0/5 V DC	Paper conveying motor lock signal
	5	CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper conveying motor drive control signal
YC15 Connected to the eject guide sole- noid, feed- shift solenoid A, feedshift solenoid B and punch solenoid	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Eject guide solenoid on/off
	3	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	4	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid B (latch-on)
	5	RET	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid B (release)
	6	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	7	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Punch solenoid (latch-on) on/off
	8	RET	O	0/24 V DC	Punch solenoid (release) on/off
	9	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	10	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid A (latch-on)
	11	RET	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid A (release)
	12	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	13	N.C.	-	-	Not used
YC16 Connected to the mov- able guide motor	1	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Movable guide motor drive signal
	2	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC poser output
	3	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Movable guide motor drive signal
	4	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Movable guide motor drive signal
	5	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC poser output
	6	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Movable guide motor drive signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC17	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
Connected to the lock solenoid	2	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Lock solenoid (latch-on) on/off
	3	RET	O	0/24 V DC	Lock solenoid (release) on/off
YC18	A1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Connected to the intermediate tray	A2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A7	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A8	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	A9	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	A10	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A11	CS	I	0/5 V DC	Front staple CS signal
	A12	CST	I	0/5 V DC	Front staple CST signal
	A13	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A14	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A15	CS	I	0/5 V DC	Rear staple CS signal
	A16	CST	I	0/5 V DC	Rear staple CST signal
	A17	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A18	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A19	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A20	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A21	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A22	HP	I	0/5 V DC	Front clincher home position sensor on/off
A23	HP	I	0/5 V DC	Rear clincher home position sensor on/off	
A24	PCBHPS-L	I	0/5 V DC	Lower paper conveying belt home position sensor on/off	
A25	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
B1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
B2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
B3	SG	-	-	Signal ground	
B4	SG	-	-	Signal ground	
B5	SG	-	-	Signal ground	
B6	SG	-	-	Signal ground	
B7	N.C.	-	-	Not used	
B8	N.C.	-	-	Not used	
B9	N.C.	-	-	Not used	
B10	DHP	I	0/5 V DC	Rear stapler home position sensor on/off	
B11	LS	I	0/5 V DC	Rear staple LS signal	
B12	CD	I	0/5 V DC	Rear staple CD signal	
B13	SG	-	-	Signal ground	
B14	DHP	I	0/5 V DC	Front stapler home position sensor on/off	
B15	LS	I	0/5 V DC	Front staple LS signal	
B16	CD	I	0/5 V DC	Front staple CD signal	
B17	N.C.	-	-	Not used	
B18	N.C.	-	-	Not used	
B19	N.C.	-	-	Not used	
B20	SRGHPS-L	I	0/5 V DC	Lower side registration guide home position sensor on/off	
B21	SRGHPS-RU	I	0/5 V DC	Rear upper side registration guide home position sensor on/off	

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC18	B22	SRGHPS-FU	I	0/5 V DC	Front upper side registration guide home position sensor on/off
Connected to the intermediate tray	B23	PS-L	I	0/5 V DC	Lower paper sensor on/off
	B24	PS-U	I	0/5 V DC	Upper paper sensor on/off
	B25	PCBHPS-U	I	0/5 V DC	Upper paper conveying belt home position sensor on/off
	YC19	1	5V	O	5 V DC
Connected to the main tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor, multi job tray paper upper surface detection light intercepting sensor and multi job tray position sensor	2	MTPUSDLES	O	0/5 V DC	Main tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor on/off
	3	LED	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	5	MJTPUSD LIS	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray paper upper surface detection light intercepting sensor on/off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	8	MJTPUSD LIS	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray position sensor on/off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	YC20	A1	5V	O	5 V DC
Connected to the multi job tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor, multi job tray upper limit detection sensor, main tray paper upper surface detection light intercepting sensor, main tray upper limit detection sensor, paper ejection sensor, sub tray paper ejection sensor, multi job tray rear switch and multi job tray front switch	A2	MJTPUSDLES	O	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor on/off
	A3	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	A4	MJTULDS	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray upper limit detection sensor on/off
	A5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A6	LED	I	0/5 V DC	Main tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor
	A7	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	A8	MTPUSD LIS	I	0/5 V DC	Main tray paper upper surface detection light intercepting sensor on/off
	A9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A10	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	A11	MTULDS	I	0/5 V DC	Main tray upper limit detection sensor on/off
	A12	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B1	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	B2	PEJS	I	0/5 V DC	Paper ejection sensor on/off
	B3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	B5	STPES	I	0/5 V DC	Sub tray paper ejection sensor on/off
B6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
B7	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
B8	MJT SW-R	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray rear switch on/off	
B9	SG	-	-	Signal ground	
B10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
B11	MJT SW-F	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray front switch on/off	
B12	SG	-	-	Signal ground	

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC21	1	SG	-	-	Signal ground
Connected to the movable guide home position sensor and intermediate tray paper conveying sensor	2	MGHPS	I	0/5 V DC	Movable guide home position sensor on/off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	5	ITPCS	I	0/5 V DC	Intermediate tray paper conveying sensor on/off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	N.C.	-	-	Not used
YC22	1	SG	-	-	Signal ground
Connected to the main tray lower limit detection sensor, multi job tray lower limit detection sensor and main tray load 1000/1500/3000 detection sensors	2	MTLLDS	I	0/5 V DC	Main tray lower limit detection sensor on/off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	5	MTLDS-30	I	0/5 V DC	Main tray load 3000 detection sensor on/off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	8	MJTLDS	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray lower limit detection sensor on/off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	10	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	11	MTLDS-15	I	0/5 V DC	Main tray load 1500 detection sensor on/off
	12	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	13	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	14	MTLDS-10	I	0/5 V DC	Main tray load 1000 detection sensor on/off
	15	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC23	1	SG	-	-	Signal ground
Connected to the paper entry sensor and punch waste box sensor	2	PES	I	0/5 V DC	Paper entry sensor on/off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	5	PWBS	I	0/5 V DC	Punch waste box sensor on/off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC24	A1	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Upper paper conveying belt motor drive control signal
Connected to the intermediate tray	A2	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A3	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Upper paper conveying belt motor drive control signal
	A4	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Lower paper conveying belt motor drive control signal
	A5	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A6	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Lower paper conveying belt motor drive control signal
	A7	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Front upper side registration guide motor drive control signal
	A8	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A9	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Front upper side registration guide motor drive control signal
	A10	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Rear upper side registration guide motor drive control signal
	A11	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A12	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Rear upper side registration guide motor drive control signal
	A13	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Lower side registration guide motor drive control signal
	A14	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A15	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Lower side registration guide motor drive control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC24	A16	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
Connected to the inter- mediate tray	A17	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A18	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Front stapler motor drive control signal
	A19	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Front stapler motor drive control signal
	A20	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Front stapler motor drive control signal
	A21	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Rear stapler motor drive control signal
	A22	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Rear stapler motor drive control signal
	A23	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Rear stapler motor drive control signal
	A24	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A25	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A26	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	A27	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Front clincher motor drive control signal
	A28	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Front clincher motor drive control signal
	A29	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Rear clincher motor drive control signal
	A30	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Rear clincher motor drive control signal
	B1	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Rear clincher motor drive control signal
	B2	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Rear clincher motor drive control signal
	B3	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Front clincher motor drive control signal
	B4	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Front clincher motor drive control signal
	B5	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	B6	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	B7	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	B8	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	B9	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Rear stapler motor drive control signal
	B10	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Rear stapler motor drive control signal
	B11	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Rear stapler motor drive control signal
	B12	MOTOR F	O	0/24 V DC	Front stapler motor drive control signal
	B13	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Front stapler motor drive control signal
	B14	MOTOR R	O	0/24 V DC	Front stapler motor drive control signal
	B15	PFPSOL	O	0/24 V DC	Paper forwarding pulley solenoid on/off
	B16	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Lower side registration guide motor drive control signal
B17	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output	
B18	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Lower side registration guide motor drive control signal	
B19	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Rear upper side registration guide motor drive control signal	
B20	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output	
B21	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Rear upper side registration guide motor drive control signal	
B22	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Front upper side registration guide motor drive control signal	
B23	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output	
B24	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Front upper side registration guide motor drive control signal	
B25	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Lower paper conveying belt motor drive control signal	
B26	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output	
B27	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Lower paper conveying belt motor drive control signal	
B28	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Upper paper conveying belt motor drive control signal	
B29	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output	
B30	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Upper paper conveying belt motor drive control signal	

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC25	1	RET	O	0/24 V DC	Paper holder solenoid (release) on/off
Connected to the finisher drive PWB	2	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Paper holder solenoid (latch-on) on/off
	3	HOLD	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid C (release) on/off
	4	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid C (latch-on) on/off
	5	CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Eject motor drive control signal
	6	REM	O	0/24 V DC	Eject motor on/off
	7	MODE	O	0/5 V DC	Eject motor drive control signal
	8	CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Siding drum motor drive control signal
	9	REM	O	0/24 V DC	Siding drum motor on/off
	10	MODE	O	0/5 V DC	Siding drum motor drive control signal
	11	CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper entry motor drive control signal
	12	REM	O	0/24 V DC	Paper entry motor on/off
	13	MODE	O	0/5 V DC	Paper entry motor drive control signal
	YC26	1	REM	O	0/24 V DC
Connected to the cooling fan motor	2	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output

2-3-2 Finisher drive PWB

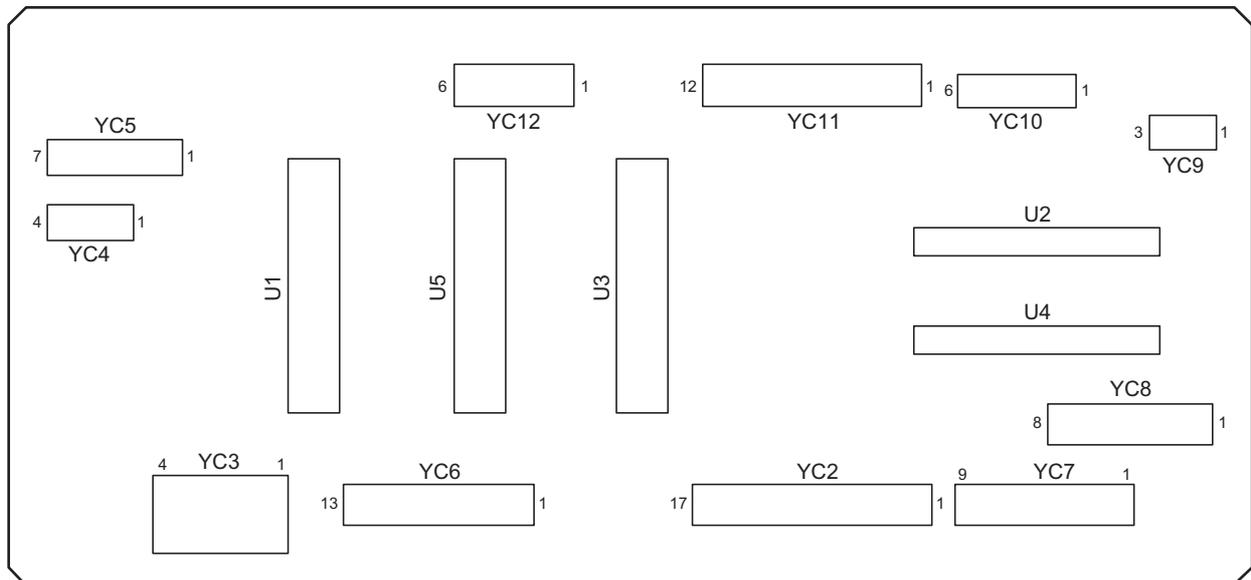


Figure 2-3-3 Finisher drive PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the fin- isher main PWB	1	MODE	I	0/5 V DC	Paper entry motor drive control signal
	2	REM	I	0/24 V DC	Paper entry motor on/off
	3	CLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper entry motor drive control signal
	4	MODE	I	0/5 V DC	Siding drum motor drive control signal
	5	REM	I	0/24 V DC	Siding drum motor on/off
	6	CLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Siding drum motor drive control signal
	7	MODE	I	0/5 V DC	Eject motor drive control signal
	8	REM	I	0/24 V DC	Eject motor on/off
	9	CLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Eject motor drive control signal
	10	ACT	I	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid C (latch-on) on/off
	11	HOLD	I	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid C (release) on/off
	12	ACT	I	0/24 V DC	Paper holder solenoid (latch-on) on/off
	13	RET	I	0/24 V DC	Paper holder solenoid (release) on/off
YC2 Connected to the fin- isher main PWB	1	REM	I	0/24 V DC	Main tray elevation motor on/off
	2	CW/CCW	I	0/24 V DC	Main tray elevation motor drive control signal
	3	MODE	I	0/24 V DC	Main tray elevation motor drive control signal
	4	REM	I	0/24 V DC	Multi job tray elevation motor on/off
	5	CW/CCW	I	0/24 V DC	Multi job tray elevation motor drive control signal
	6	MODE	I	0/24 V DC	Multi job tray elevation motor drive control signal
	7	PHDS	O	0/5 V DC	Paper holder detection sensor on/off
	8	DETECTION	O	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray detection signal
	9	PDSW1	O	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 1 on/off
	10	PDSW2	O	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 2 on/off
	11	PDSW3	O	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 3 on/off
	12	PDSW4	O	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 4 on/off
	13	PDSW5	O	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 5 on/off
	14	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	15	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	16	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	17	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
YC3 Connected to the fin- isher main PWB	1	24VR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	2	PG	-	-	Power ground
	3	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
YC4 Connected to the fin- isher main PWB	1	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	2	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	3	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	4	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
YC5 Connected to the feed- shift sole- noid C and upper cover switch	1	24VR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid C (latch-on) on/off
	3	HOLD	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid C (release) on/off
	4	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	5	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	6	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	7	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power input

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC7	1	SG	-	-	Signal ground
Connected to the multi job tray	2	PDSW5	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 5 on/off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	PDSW4	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 4 on/off
	5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	7	PDSW3	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 3 on/off
	8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	9	N.C.	-	-	Not used
YC8	1	SG	-	-	Signal ground
Connected to the multi job tray	2	PDSW2	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 2 on/off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	5	PDSW1	I	0/5 V DC	Paper detection switch 1 on/off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	REVERSE	O	0/24 V DC	Multi job tray elevation motor (reverse) on/off
	8	FORWARD	O	0/24 V DC	Multi job tray elevation motor (forward) on/off
YC9	1	REVERSE	O	0/24 V DC	Main tray elevation motor (reverse) on/off
Connected to the main tray eleva-	2	FORWARD	O	0/24 V DC	Main tray elevation motor (forward) on/off
	3	DETECTION	I	0/5 V DC	Multi job tray detection signal
YC10	1	24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
Connected to the paper holder solenoid and paper holder detection sensor	2	ACT	O	0/24 V DC	Paper holder solenoid (latch-on) on/off
	3	RET	O	0/24 V DC	Paper holder solenoid (release) on/off
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	5	PHDS	I	0/5 V DC	Paper holder detection sensor on/off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC11	1	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Siding drum motor drive control signal
Connected to the siding drum motor and eject motor	2	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Siding drum motor drive control signal
	4	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Siding drum motor drive control signal
	5	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	6	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Siding drum motor drive control signal
	7	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Eject motor drive control signal
	8	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	9	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Eject motor drive control signal
	10	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Eject motor drive control signal
	11	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	12	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Eject motor drive control signal
YC12	1	_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Paper entry motor drive control signal
Connected to the paper entry motor	2	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Paper entry motor drive control signal
	4	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Paper entry motor drive control signal
	5	COM(24VR)	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	6	_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Paper entry motor drive control signal

2-3-3 Centerfold unit main PWB

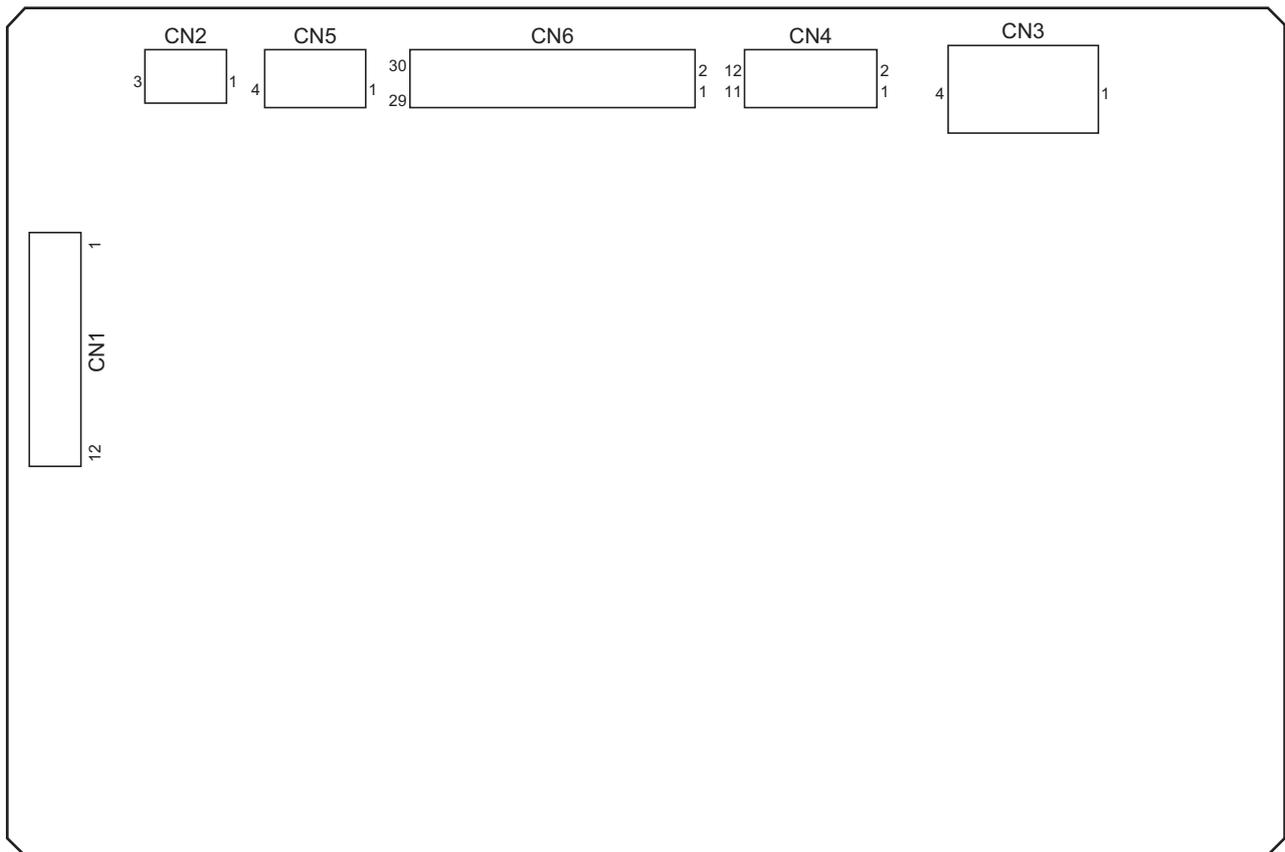


Figure 2-3-4 Centerfold unit main PWB block diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
CN1 Connected to the finisher	1	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	2	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	3	PG(24V)	-	-	Power ground
	4	PG(24V)	-	-	Power ground
	5	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	6	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	7	TxD	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Finisher communication signal
	8	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	9	RxD	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Finisher communication signal
	10	SG	-	-	Signal ground
	11	RESET	I	0/5 V DC	RESET signal from the finisher
	12	DET	O	0/5 V DC	DET signal to the finisher
CN2 Connected to the eject tray detection switch	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	3	ETPSW	I	0/24 V DC	Eject tray detection switch on/off
CN3 Connected to the main motor and centerfold blade motor	1	MM F	O	0/24 V DC	Main motor (forward) on/off
	2	MM R	O	0/24 V DC	Main motor (reverse) on/off
	3	CBLM F	O	0/24 V DC	Centerfold blade motor (forward) on/off
	4	CBLM R	O	0/24 V DC	Centerfold blade motor (reverse) on/off
CN4 Connected to the side registration guide motor and centering plate motor	1	SRGM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Side registration guide motor drive control signal
	2	SRGM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Side registration guide motor drive control signal
	3	SRGM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Side registration guide motor drive control signal
	4	SRGM_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Side registration guide motor drive control signal
	5	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	6	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	7	CPM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Centering plate motor drive control signal
	8	CPM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Centering plate motor drive control signal
	9	CPM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	Centering plate motor drive control signal
	10	CPM_B	O	0/24 V DC	Centering plate motor drive control signal
	11	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	12	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
CN5 Connected to the motor pulse sensor	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	2	MPS	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Motor pulse sensor on/off
	3	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	4	SG	-	-	Signal ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description	
CN6 Connected to the side registration guide home position sensor, cen- tering plate home posi- tion sensor, centerfold blade home position sensor, folded edge detection sensor, cen- terfold unit paper entry sensor, inside tray detection sensor, eject tray paper detection switch and pressures release solenoid	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
	2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
	4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
	5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
	7	N.C.	-	-	-	Not used
	8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output	
	9	SG	-	-	-	Signal ground
	10	SG	-	-	-	Signal ground
	11	SG	-	-	-	Signal ground
	12	SG	-	-	-	Signal ground
	13	SG	-	-	-	Signal ground
	14	SG	-	-	-	Signal ground
	15	N.C.	-	-	-	Not used
	16	SG	-	-	-	Signal ground
	17	SPGHPS	I	0/5 V DC	0/5 V DC	Side registration guide home position sensor on/off
	18	CPHPS	I	0/5 V DC	0/5 V DC	Centering plate home position sensor on/off
	19	CBLHPS	I	0/5 V DC	0/5 V DC	Centerfold blade home position sensor on/off
	20	FEPS	I	0/5 V DC	0/5 V DC	Folded edge detection sensor on/off
	21	CUPES	I	0/5 V DC	0/5 V DC	Centerfold unit paper entry sensor on/off
	22	ITDSS	I	0/5 V DC	0/5 V DC	Inside tray detection sensor on/off
	23	N.C.	-	-	-	Not used
	24	ETPDSW	I	0/5 V DC	0/5 V DC	Eject tray paper detection switch on/off
	25	N.C.	-	-	-	Not used
	26	N.C.	-	-	-	Not used
	27	PRSOL RET	O	0/24 V DC	0/24 V DC	Pressures release solenoid (release) on/off
	28	PRSOL ACT	O	0/24 V DC	0/24 V DC	Pressures release solenoid (latch-on) on/off
	29	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC	24 V DC power output

This page is intentionally left blank.

**Maintenance parts list**  
**Finisher**

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Siding drum	GUIDE DRUM ASS'Y	303H316370	3H316370	3	8
Intermediate tray paper entry roller	ROLLER MIDDLE TRAY F I	3H316540	-	4	13
Upper paper entry roller	UPPER ROLLER FEED IN	303H316231	3H316231	4	45
Lower paper entry roller	LOWER ROLLER FEED IN	3H316220	-	4	28
Sub tray eject roller	ROLLER SUB EJECT	3H316550	-	5	10
Eject roller	ROLLER,MAIN EJECT	3H321010	-	5	16
Sub tray eject static eliminator	STATIC ELIMINATOR,SUB EJECT	3B816920	-	3	36
	STATIC ELIMINATOR,SUB EJECT	3B816920	-	5	58
Gear 18	GEAR 18,TRAY DRIVE	3B820190	-	10	35
Gear 50	GEAR 50,TRAY DRIVE	3B820180	-	10	34
Gear 51	GEAR 51	3AK20090	-	10	20
Worm gear	GEAR,WORM MAIN TRAY	3AK20130	-	10	21
Forwarding roller sheet	SHEET,LEADING FEED ROLLER	3B807820	-	9	49
Paper forwarding pulley	PULLEY,LEADING REGISTRATION	68721420	-	9	53
Main tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor	SENSOR A,SEPARATION	303H327460	3H327460	2	33
Main tray paper upper surface detection light intercepting sensor	SENSOR A,SEPARATION	303H327460	3H327460	2	33
Multi job tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor	SENSOR B SEPARATION	303H327470	3H327470	2	34
Multi job tray paper upper surface detection light intercepting sensor	SENSOR B SEPARATION	303H327470	3H327470	2	34
Paper entry sensor	SENSOR FEED B	303H327500	3H327500	4	48
Upper paper conveying belt home position sensor	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	6	13
Upper paper sensor	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	6	13
Lower paper sensor	SWITCH REGISTRATION	2FG27110	-	6	7
Intermediate tray paper conveying sensor	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	5	55
Paper ejection sensor	SENSOR,CONVEYING	3H327410	-	5	55
Sub tray paper ejection sensor	SENSOR FEED A	303H327490	3H327490	5	44

**Centerfold unit**

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Storage cover	TRAY,EJECT	303CA04013	3CA04013	5	3
Right cover	LEFT FRONT COVER BK	303MM04010	3MM04010	5	4
Left cover	LEFT REAR COVER BK	303MM04020	3MM04020	5	5
Eject guide upper spacer	UPPER SPACER EJECT BK	303MM04030	3MM04030	3	25
Ejected paper holding arm	ARM PAPER EJECT HOLDER H	303CA04121	3CA04121	3	1
Paper entry roller	ROLLER,FEED IN	303CA16081	3CA16081	2	29
Eject roller	ROLLER,EJECT	303CA16091	3CA16091	3	4
Paper ejecting brush	BRUSH,PAPER EJECT REGISTRATION	3CA16210	-	3	13
Paper entry pulley	PULLEY,FEEDBACK	62221110	-	2	42
Eject pulley	PULLEY,FEEDBACK	62221110	-	3	22
Left centerfold roller	ROLLER PRESS A	303LV31010	3LV31010	2	13
Right centerfold roller	ROLLER PRESS B	303LV31020	3LV31020	2	14
Centerfold blade	BLADE,MIDDLE PRESSING	3CA08030	-	2	15
Eject tray paper detection switch	SWITCH EMPTY	303CA27070	3CA27070	1	19
Folded edge detection sensor	SWITCH FEED	303CA27080	3CA27080	3	27
Inside tray detection sensor	SWITCH FEED	303CA27080	3CA27080	2	50
Centerfold unit paper entry sensor	SWITCH FEED	303CA27080	3CA27080	2	50
Centering plate home position sensor	SWITCH EMPTY	303CA27070	3CA27070	2	44
Eject tray detection switch	PT.SENSOR GP1A73AJ00	5FNXGP1A73A++02	2DC27180	1	23
Side registration guide home position sensor	PT.SENSOR GP1A73AJ00	5FNXGP1A73A++02	2DC27180	2	41
Centerfold blade home position sensor	PT.SENSOR GP1A73AJ00	5FNXGP1A73A++02	2DC27180	4	42

**Multi job tray**

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Job tray	BIN,EJECT	303CB04011	3CB04011	2	4
Job tray lid	LID,BIN EJECT	303CB04021	3CB04021	2	5
Gear 18	GEAR 18,TRAY DRIVE	3B820190	-	1	47
Gear 50	GEAR 50,TRAY DRIVE	3B820180	-	1	46
Gear 51	GEAR 51	3AK20090	-	1	18
Worm gear	GEAR,WORM MAIN TRAY	3AK20130	-	1	19

**Punch unit**

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Drive cum gear 40	GEAR 40 CAM DRIVE	3H416110	-	1	4
Idle gear 16/51	GEAR 16-51 IDLE	3H416120	-	1	5

## Periodic maintenance procedures

### Finisher

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Exterior	Overall exterior cover	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed conveying section	Siding drum	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Intermediate tray paper entry roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Upper paper entry roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Lower paper entry roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Sub tray eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Sub tray eject static eliminator	Check	Every service	If paper powder or dust adheres to tip of brush, remove it.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Driving section	Gear 18	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	
	Gear 50	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	
	Gear 51	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	
	Worm gear	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Intermediate tray section	Forwarding roller sheet	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Paper forwarding pulley	Check and clean	Every service	If soiled with paper powder or toner, clean. Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Sensors	Main tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Main tray paper upper surface detection light intercepting sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Multi job tray paper upper surface detection light emitting sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Multi job tray paper upper surface detection light intercepting sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper entry sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Upper paper conveying belt home position sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Upper paper sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Lower paper sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Intermediate tray paper conveying sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Paper ejection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
Sub tray paper ejection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush		

**Centerfold unit**

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Exterior	Storage cover	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Right cover	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Left cover	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject guide upper spacer	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Ejected paper holding arm	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed and conveying section	Paper entry roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Paper ejecting brush	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Paper entry pulley	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject pulley	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Centerfold section	Left centerfold roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Right centerfold roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Centerfold blade	Check and replace	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. If deformed or bent, replace.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Sensors	Eject tray paper detection switch	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Folded edge detection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Inside tray detection sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold unit paper entry sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centering plate home position sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Eject tray detection switch	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Side registration guide home position sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	
	Centerfold blade home position sensor	Clean	Every service	Air brush	

**Multi job tray**

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Exterior	Job tray	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Job tray lid	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Others	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

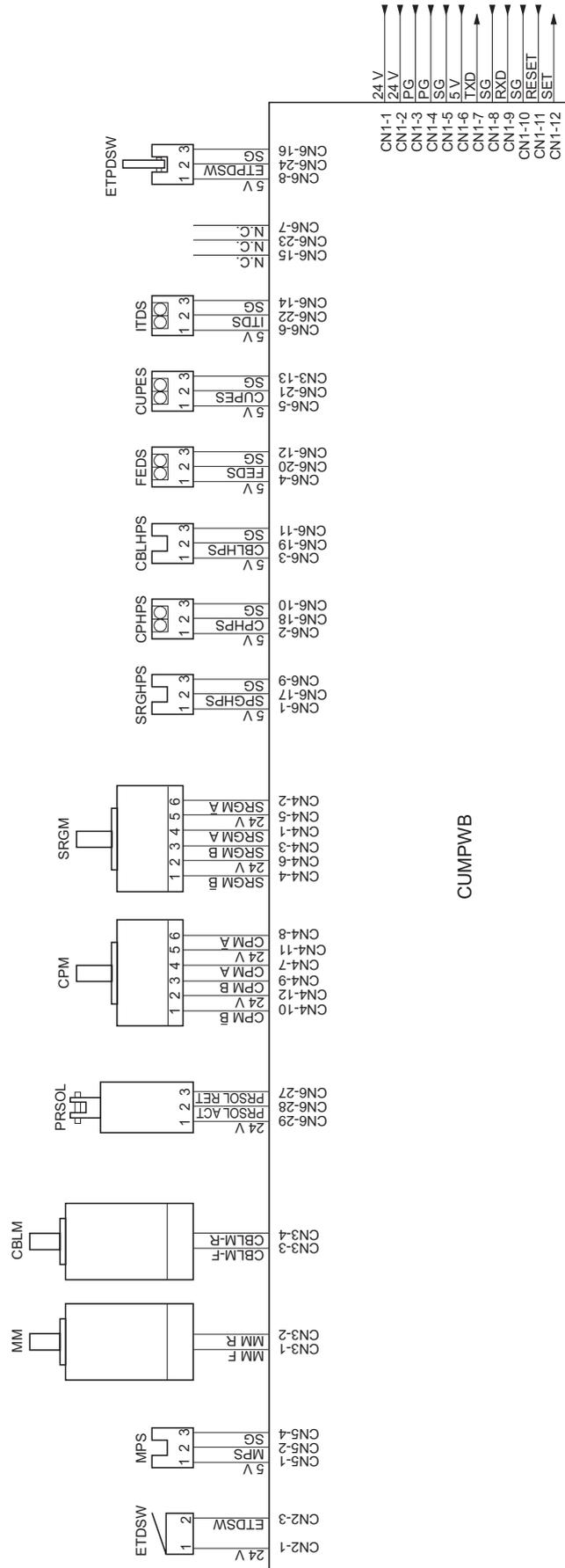


Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Driving section	Gear 18	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	
	Gear 50	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	
	Gear 51	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	
	Worm gear	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	

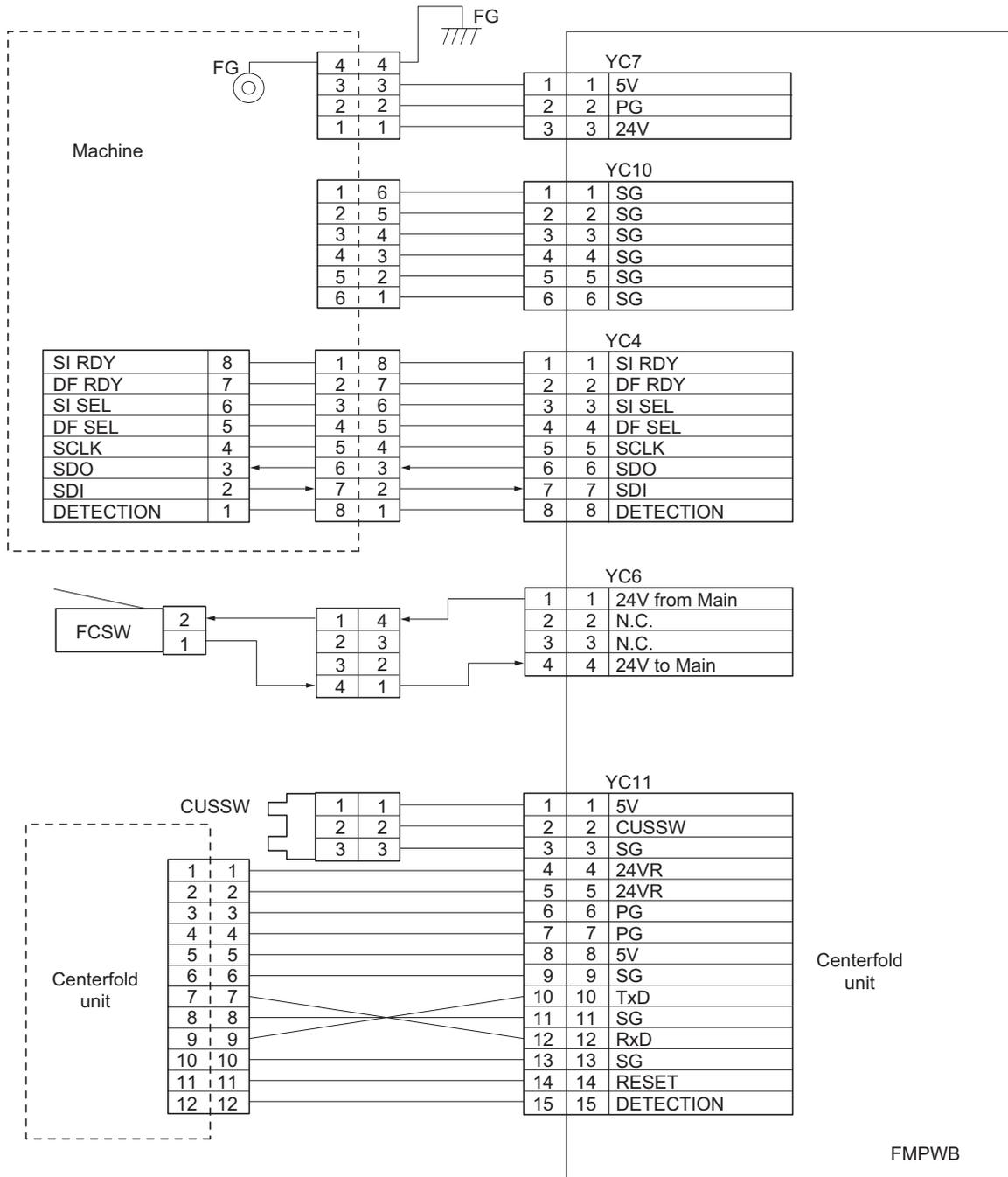
**Punch unit**

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Driving section	Drive cum gear 40	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	
	Idle gear 16/51	Grease	Every service	Apply grease EM-50L to teeth.	

Centerfold unit wiring diagram

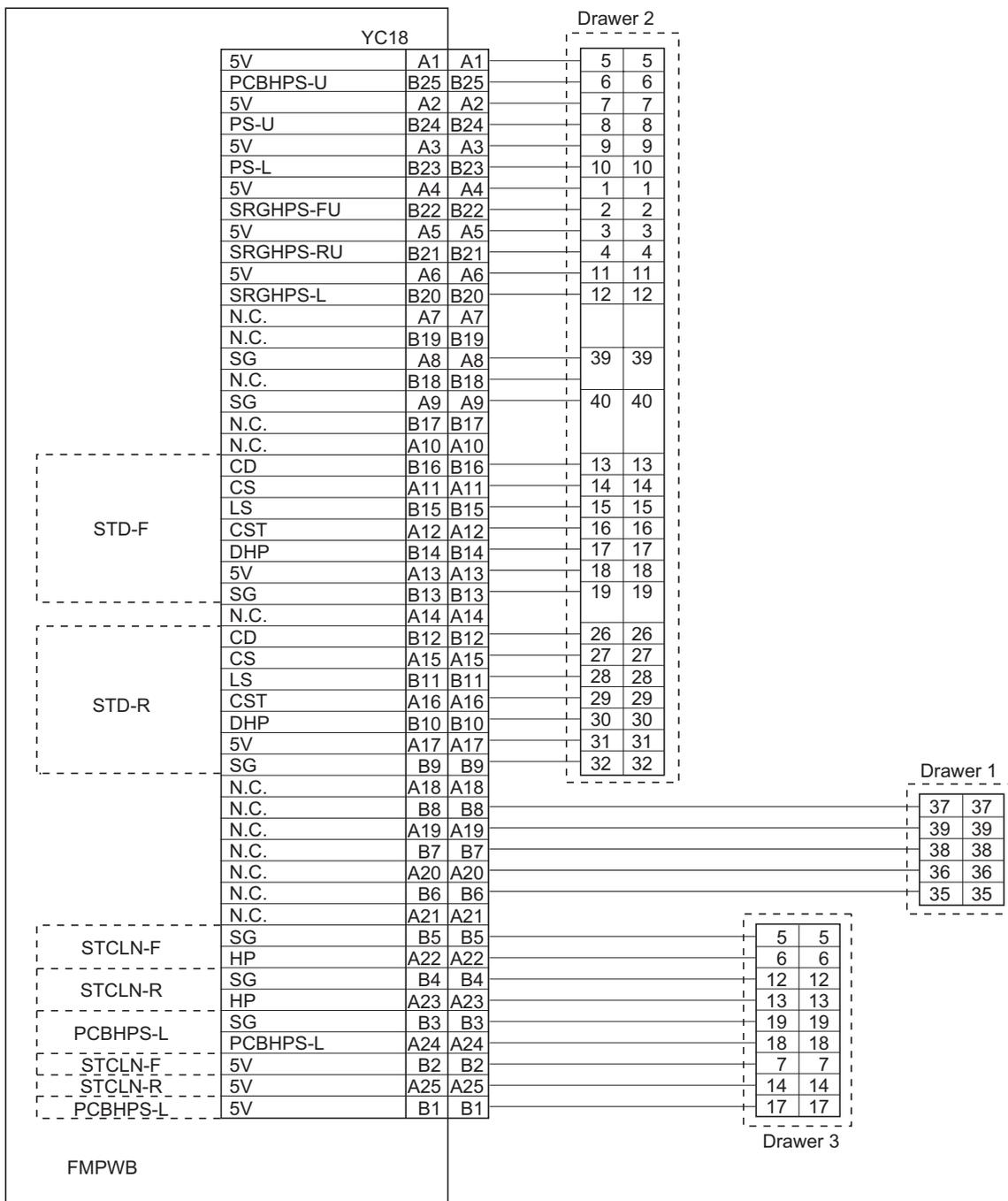


**General wiring diagram No.1**



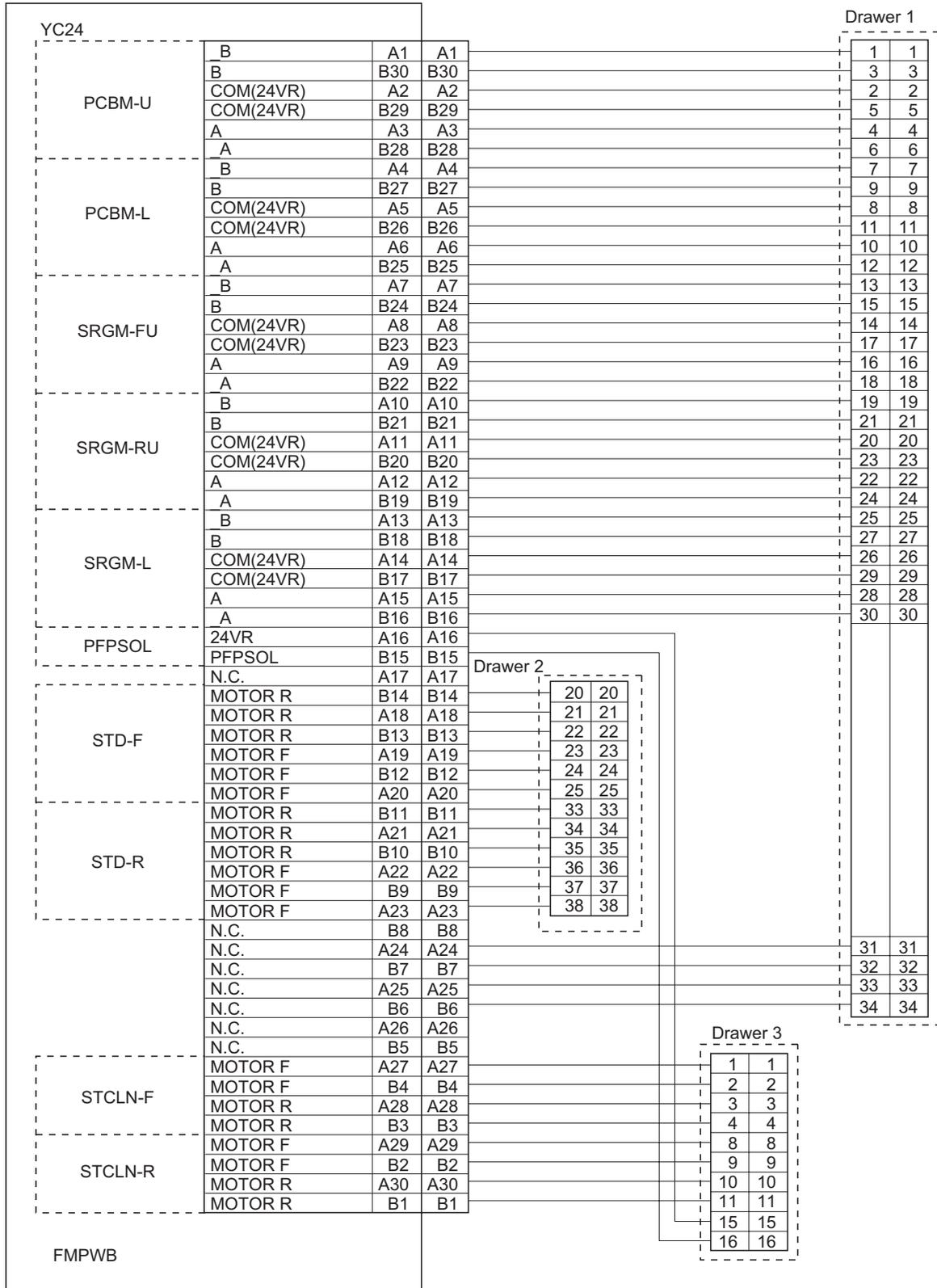
### General wiring diagram No.2

FMPWB - Intermediate tray

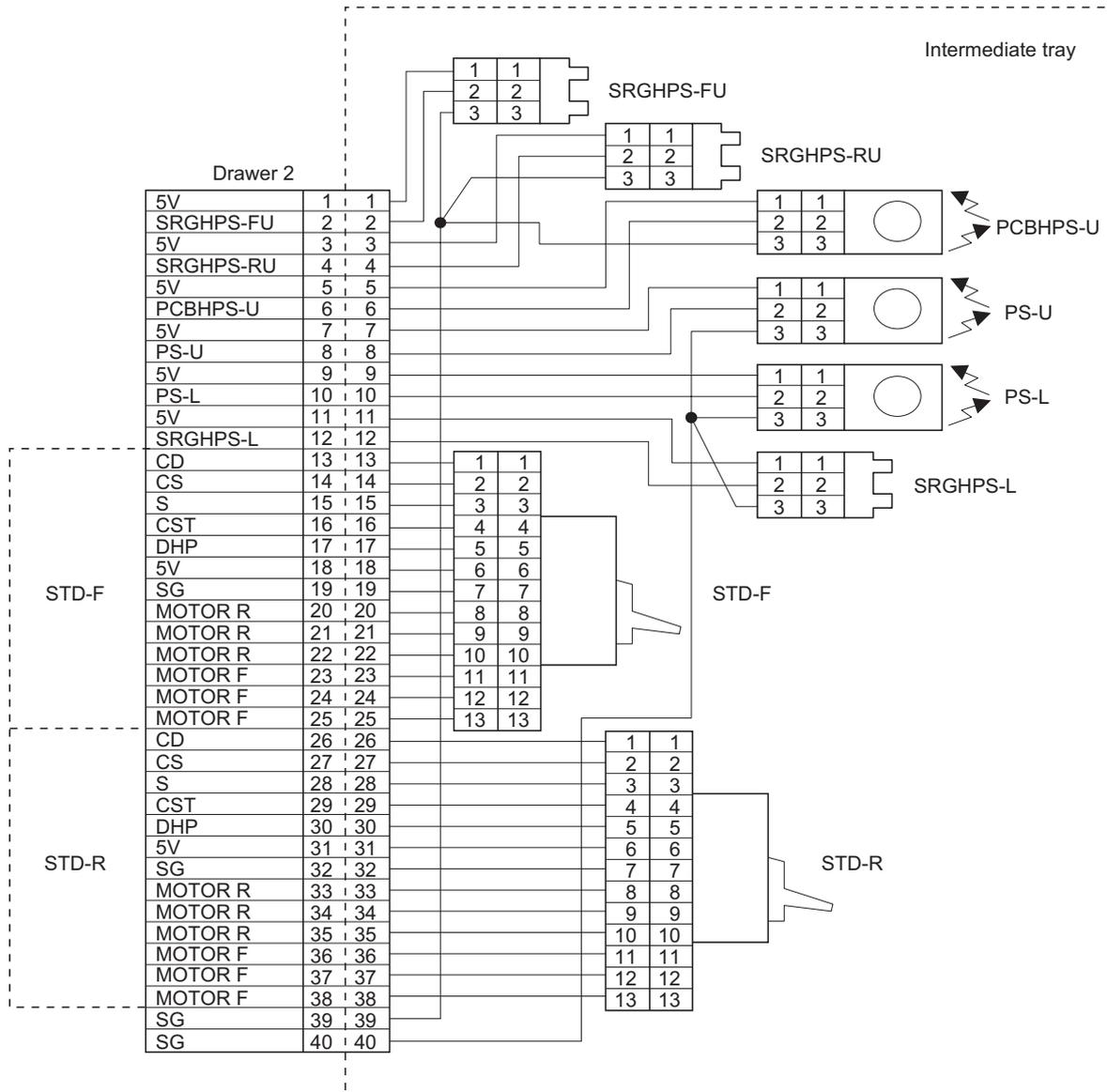


**General wiring diagram No.3**

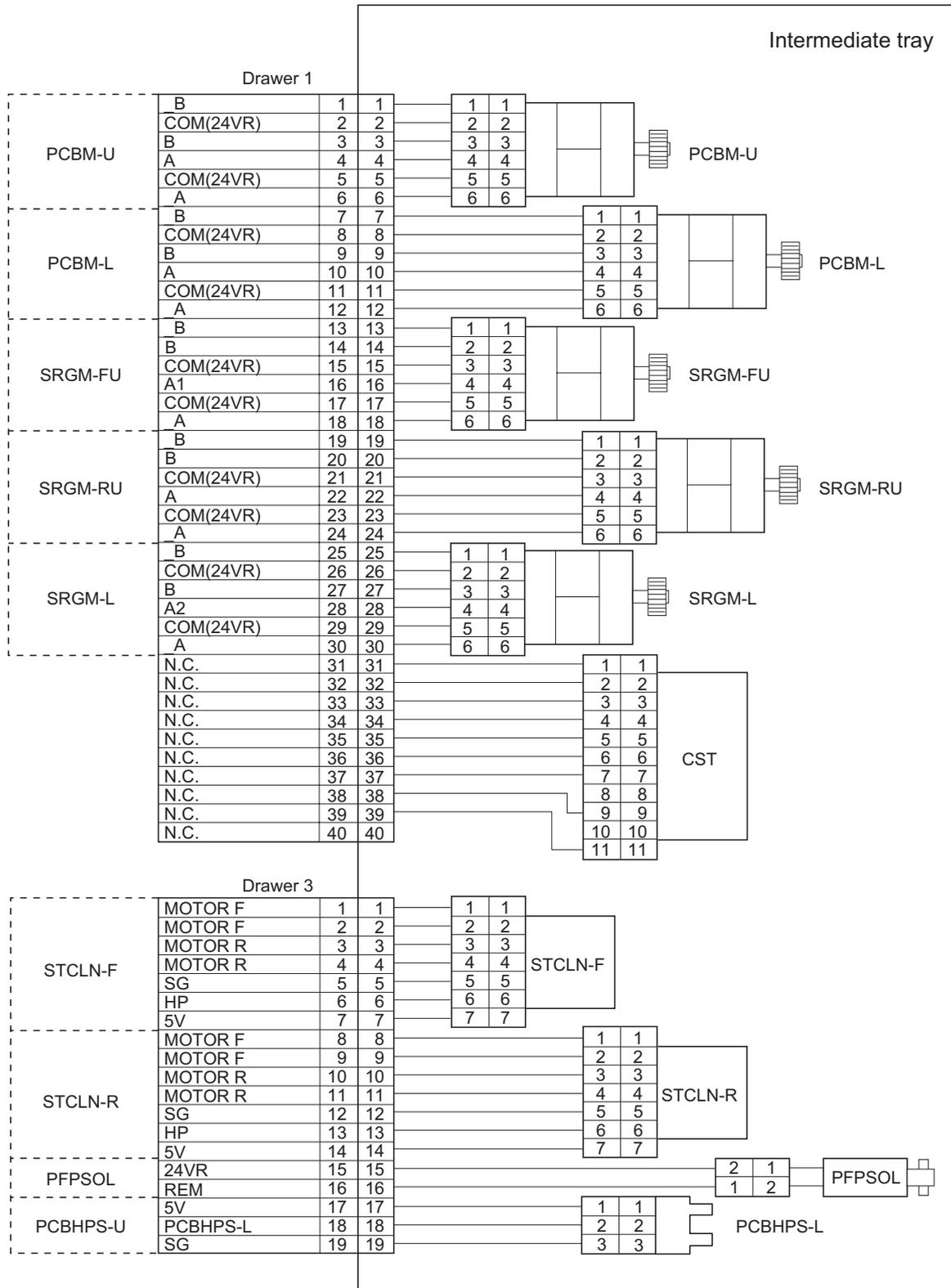
FMPWB - Intermediate tray



General wiring diagram No.4

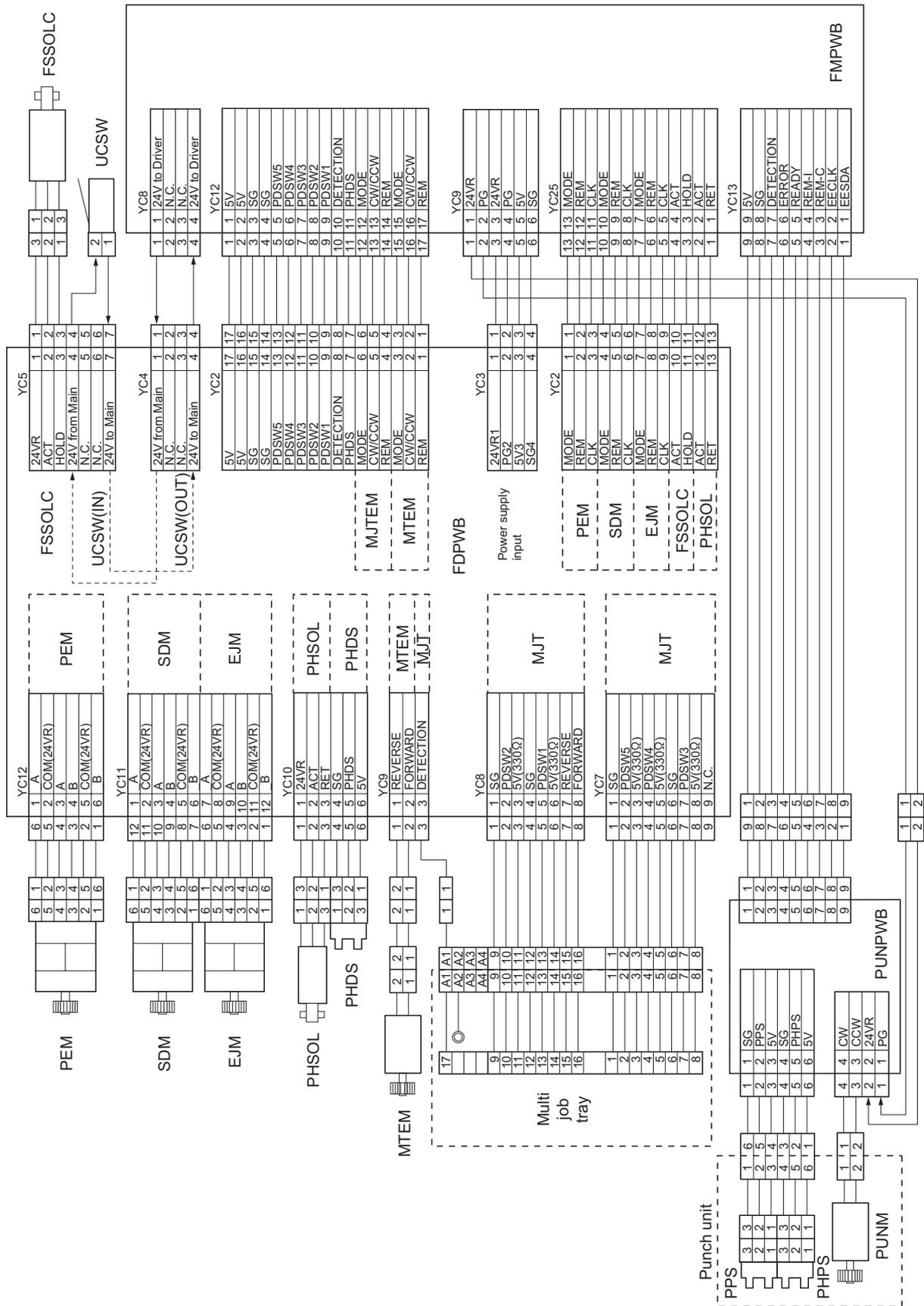


**General wiring diagram No.5**

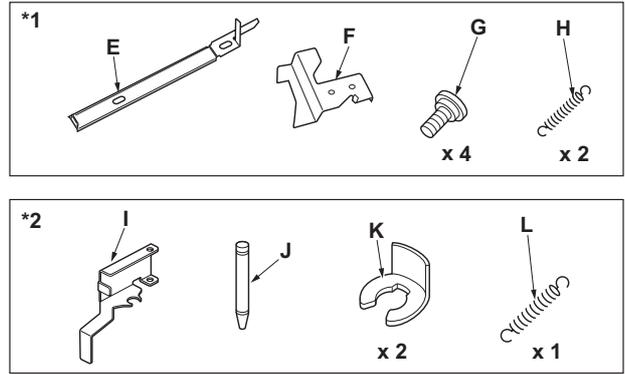
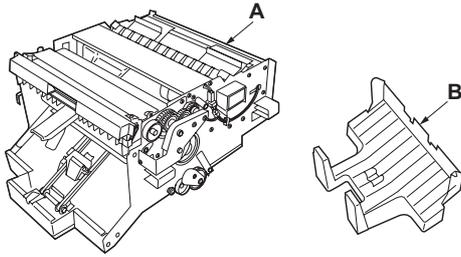




General wiring diagram No.7



# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR CENTERFOLD UNIT**



**English**

**Supplied parts**

A Centerfold unit .....	1
B Eject tray .....	1
C Left cover .....	1
D Right cover .....	1
E Release lever actuating plate .....	1

F Backstop .....	1
G Pins .....	4
H Small springs .....	2
I Unit lock hook .....	1
J Unit lock rod .....	1
K Large stop rings .....	2
L Large spring .....	1

\*1: Use them in steps 6 to 9 (pages 4 and 5).  
\*2: Use them in steps 18 to 21 (page 8).

**Français**

**Pièces fournies**

A Unité pour pages centrales dépliables.....	1
B Plateau d'éjection .....	1
C Couvercle gauche .....	1
D Couvercle droit .....	1

E Plaque de commande du levier de dégage-ment .....	1
F Butée .....	1
G Aiguilles .....	4
H Petit ressorts .....	2
I Crochet de verrouillage de l'unité .....	1
J Tige de verrouillage de l'unité .....	1
K Grand anneau de butées .....	2

L Grand ressort ..... 1 |

\*1: Les utiliser dans les étapes 6 à 9 (pages 4 et 5).  
\*2: Les utiliser dans les étapes 18 à 21 (page 8).

**Español**

**Partes suministradas**

A Unidad de plegado .....	1
B Bandeja de expulsión .....	1
C Cubierta izquierda .....	1
D Cubierta derecha .....	1

E Placa de maniobra de la palanca de liberación .....	1
F Dispositivo antirretroceso .....	1
G Pernos .....	4
H Resortes pequeño .....	2
I Gancho del cierre de la unidad .....	1
J Varilla del cierre de la unidad .....	1
K Anillos tope grande .....	2

L Resorte grande ..... 1 |

\*1: Utilícelos en los pasos 6 a 9 (páginas 4 y 5).  
\*2: Utilícelos en los pasos 18 a 21 (página 8).

**Deutsch**

**Gelieferte Teile**

A Mittelfalt-Einheit .....	1
B Auswurftray .....	1
C Linke Abdeckung .....	1
D Rechte Abdeckung .....	1
E Lösehebel-Antriebsscheibe .....	1

F Anschlag .....	1
G Stiften .....	4
H Kleine Federen .....	2
I Einheit-Sperrhaken .....	1
J Einheit-Sperrstange .....	1
K Großer Stoppringen .....	2
L Grosse Feder .....	1

\*1: Verwenden Sie die Teile in den Schritten 6 bis 9 (Seiten 4 und 5).  
\*2: Verwenden Sie die Teile in den Schritten 18 bis 21 (Seite 8).

**Italiano**

**Parti fornite**

A Unità per piegatura centrale .....	1
B Slitta di espulsione .....	1
C Pannello sinistro .....	1
D Pannello destro .....	1
E Piastra di azionamento leva di rilascio .....	1

F Blocco del senso opposto .....	1
G Piedini .....	4
H Molli piccola .....	2
I Gancio bloccaggio unità .....	1
J Barra di bloccaggio unità .....	1
K Anelli di arresto grande .....	2
L Molla grande .....	1

\*1: Usarli nei punti da 6 a 9 (pagine 4 e 5).  
\*2: Usarli nei punti da 18 a 21 (pagina 8).

**简体中文**

**附属品**

A 折叠装置 .....	1
B 出纸托盘 .....	1
C 左盖板 .....	1
D 右盖板 .....	1
E 释放杆工作板 .....	1

F 挡板 .....	1
G 销 .....	4
H 弹簧 (小) .....	2
I 装置锁紧挂钩部 .....	1
J 装置锁紧轴 .....	1
K 止动环 (大) .....	2
L 弹簧 (大) .....	1

\*1: 在步骤 6~9 (第 4~5 页) 上使用。  
\*2: 在步骤 18~21 (第 8 页) 上使用。

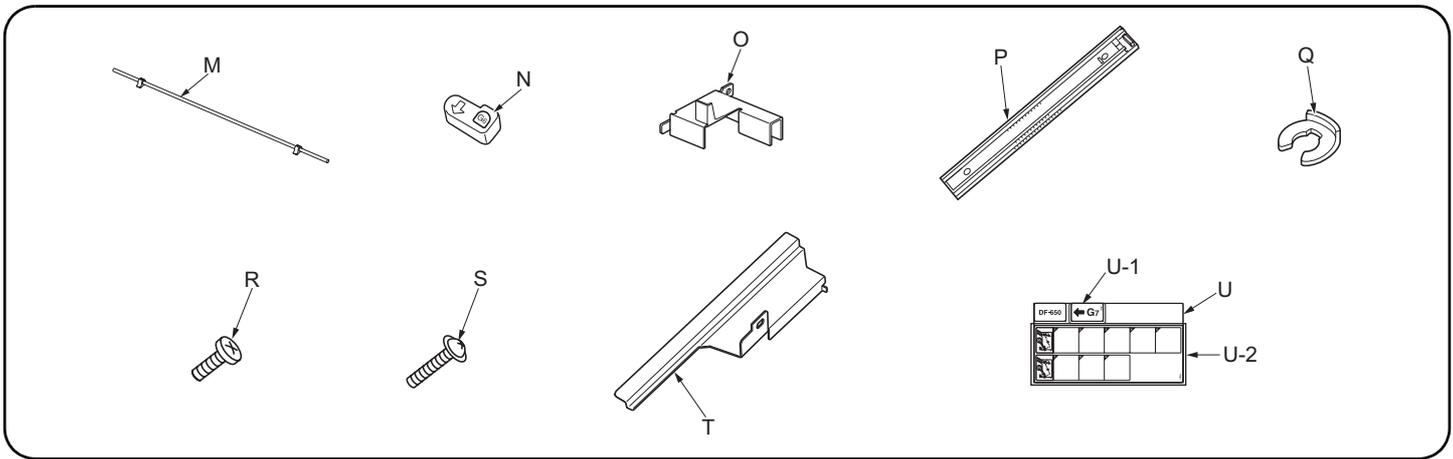
**日本語**

**同梱品**

A 中折りユニット .....	1
B 排出トレイ .....	1
C カバー左 .....	1
D カバー右 .....	1
E 解除レバー作動板 .....	1

F 当たり板 .....	1
G ビン .....	4
H バネ(小) .....	2
I ユニットロックフック .....	1
J ユニットロック軸 .....	1
K ストップリング(大) .....	2
L バネ(大) .....	1

\*1: 手順 6~9 (P. 4~5) で使用する。  
\*2: 手順 18~21 で使用する (P. 8)。



M Release pole assembly ..... 1  
 N Release handle..... 1  
 O Unit transport handle ..... 1  
 P Sliders..... 2  
 Q Medium stop ring ..... 1  
 R M4 × 8S Tight Bind screws ..... 8  
 S M4 × 10 TP screw..... 3  
 T Douser detecting PI ..... 1

U Label sheet ..... 1

**Precautions**

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

M Assemblage du pôle de dégagement ..... 1  
 N Poignée de dégagement ..... 1  
 O Poignée de transport de l'unité ..... 1  
 P Règles ..... 2  
 Q Médian anneau de butée ..... 1  
 R Vis de raccordement M4 × 8S ..... 8  
 S Vis en M4 × 10 TP ..... 3  
 T Plaque d'ombrage ..... 1

U Feuillet d'étiquettes ..... 1

**Précautions**

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

M Ensemble del polo de liberación ..... 1  
 N Mannila de liberación ..... 1  
 O Manilla unidad de transporte ..... 1  
 P Deslizadores ..... 2  
 Q Anillo tope mediano ..... 1  
 R Tornillos de cierre hermético M4 × 8S ..... 8  
 S Tornillo de TP M4 × 10 ..... 3  
 T Detección de pantalla paraluz PI ..... 1

U Hoja con etiqueta ..... 1

**Precauciones**

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

M Lösestangen-Bausatz ..... 1  
 N Lösegriff ..... 1  
 O Einheit-Transportgriff ..... 1  
 P Schieberen ..... 2  
 Q Mittlerer Stoppring ..... 1  
 R M4 × 8S Verbundschrauben ..... 8  
 S M4 × 10 TP Schraube ..... 3  
 T Douser Detecting PI ..... 1

U Aufkleberbogen ..... 1

**Vorsichtsmaßnahmen**

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

M Gruppo polo di rilascio ..... 1  
 N Impugnatura di rilascio ..... 1  
 O Impugnatura per il trasporto dell'unità ..... 1  
 P Cursori ..... 2  
 Q Anello di arresto medio ..... 1  
 R Viti a serraggio stretto M4 × 8S ..... 8  
 S Vite di TP M4 × 10 ..... 3  
 T PI paraluce ..... 1

U Foglio di etichette ..... 1

**Precauzioni**

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

M 释放轴组件 ..... 1  
 N 释放手柄 ..... 1  
 O 装置移动手柄 ..... 1  
 P 滑板 ..... 2  
 Q 止动环(中) ..... 1  
 R M4 × 8S 型紧固连接螺钉 ..... 8  
 S M4 × 10 TP 螺钉 ..... 3  
 T 遮光检测 PI ..... 1

U 标签 ..... 1

**注意事项**

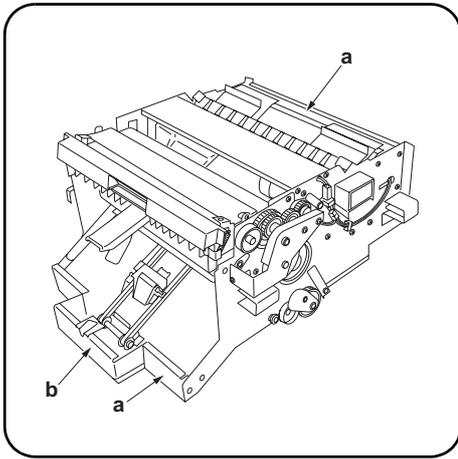
如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

M 解除轴组立 ..... 1  
 N 解除取手 ..... 1  
 O ユニット移動取手 ..... 1  
 P スライダ ..... 2  
 Q ストップリング(中) ..... 1  
 R M4 × 8S タイトバインドビス ..... 8  
 S M4 × 10 TP ビス ..... 3  
 T 遮光板検知 PI ..... 1

U ラベルシート ..... 1

**注意事項**

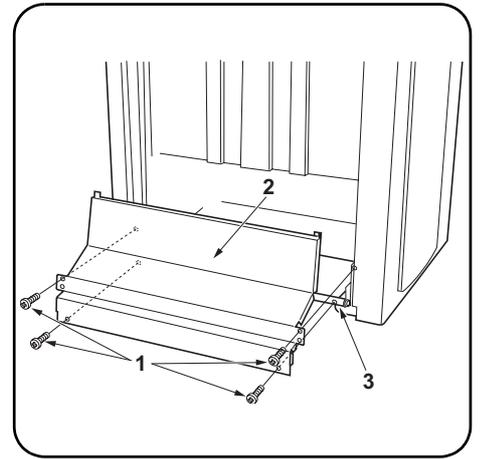
付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



### Procedure

Before installing the centerfold unit, turn the copier's main switch off and unplug the power cable from the power supply. When unpacking or installing, hold the centerfold unit by "a" indicated in the illustration. Do not hold it by "b" at the center of the unit.

**Notes before installing the centerfold unit**  
When installing the centerfold unit and multi job tray as a set, first install the centerfold unit before installing the multi job tray.



1. Remove the four screws (1) to remove the guide plate (2).
2. Remove the left lower shaft (3) from the finisher side plate.

### Procédure

Avant d'installer l'unité pour pages centrales dépliantes, mettre le copieur hors tension et débrancher le cordon d'alimentation. Lors du déemballage ou de l'installation, tenir l'unité par le point "a" indiqué sur l'illustration. Ne pas la tenir par le point "b" au centre de l'unité.

**Remarques avant l'installation de l'unité pour pages centrales dépliantes**  
Lorsque vous installez l'ensemble plateau multitâches et unité pour pages centrales dépliantes, installez d'abord l'unité puis le plateau.

1. Retirer les quatre vis (1) bloquant la plaque de guidage (2), puis retirer cette dernière.
2. Retirer le manche inférieur gauche (3) de la plaque latérale du retoucheur.

### Procedimiento

Antes de instalar la unidad de plegado, apague el interruptor principal de la copiadora y desconecte el cable de alimentación del receptáculo de pared. Al desempacar o instalar, sujete la unidad de plegado por "a", como se indica en el gráfico. No la sujete por "b", ubicado en el centro de la unidad.

**Notas antes de instalar la unidad de plegado central**  
Cuando instale la unidad de plegado central y la bandeja multitrabajos como un juego, instale en primer lugar la unidad de plegado central y después la bandeja multitrabajos.

1. Quite los cuatro tornillos (1) que aseguran la placa guía (2).
2. Quite el eje inferior izquierdo (3) de la placa lateral del finalizador.

### Vorgang

Schalten Sie vor der Installation der Mittelfalt-einheit den Kopierer am Hauptschalter aus und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose. Fassen Sie beim Auspacken oder Installieren die Mittelfalt-Einheit wie in der Abbildung dargestellt an "a" an. Fassen Sie sie nicht an "b" in der Mitte der Einheit an.

**Hinweise vor der Installation der Mittelfalt-einheit**  
Wenn die Mittelfalt-einheit und das Multi-Job-Fach zusammen installiert werden, installieren Sie zunächst die Mittelfalt-einheit und dann das Multi-Job-Fach.

1. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (1), um die Führungsplatte (2) abzunehmen.
2. Entfernen Sie den linken unteren Schaft (3) von der Seitenplatte des Finishers.

### Procedura

Prima di installare l'unità per piegatura centrale, spegnere la fotocopiatrice utilizzando l'interruttore principale e disinserire il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro. Durante le operazioni di disimballaggio o di installazione, tenere l'unità per piegatura centrale per il punto "a" indicato nell'illustrazione. Non tenerla per il punto "b" al centro dell'unità.

**Note prima di installare l'unità per piegatura centrale**  
Nell'installare come set l'unità per piegatura centrale e il vassoio multi-funzionale, installare dapprima l'unità per piegatura centrale, quindi il vassoio multi-funzionale.

1. Rimuovere le quattro viti (1) di bloccaggio della piastra della guida, quindi rimuovere la piastra (2).
2. Rimuovere l'albero inferiore sinistro (3) dalla piastra laterale della finitrice.

### [ 安装次序 ]

安装折叠装置之前, 请关闭主机的主电源开关, 然后从电源插座中拔出电源电缆。开包及安装时, 拿折叠装置时, 注意一定要拿 a 部, 不要拿中央部 b。

**安装折叠装置之前的注意事项**  
当将折叠装置和多重托盘配套安装时, 请先安装折叠装置然后安装多重托盘。

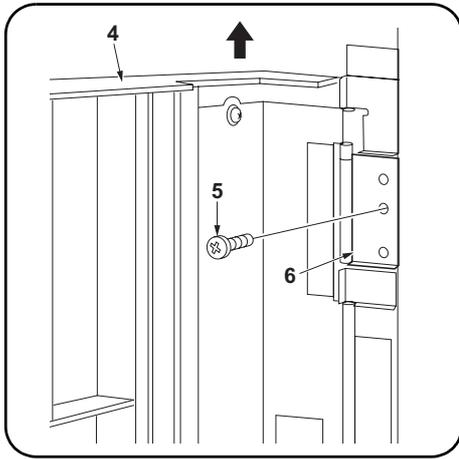
1. 卸下 4 颗螺钉(1) 以便拆卸导向板(2)。
2. 从装订器的侧板卸下左下轴(3)。

### [ 取付手順 ]

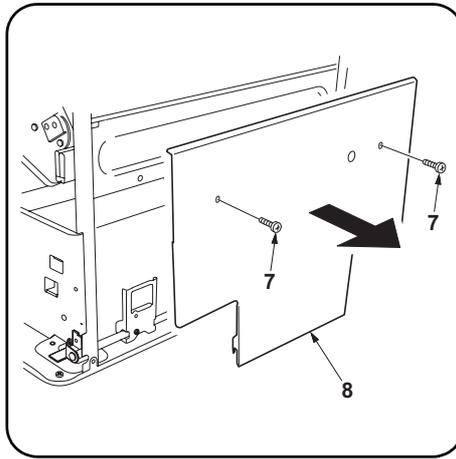
中折りユニットを設置するときは、必ず複写機本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。開梱時や取り付け時に中折りユニットを持つときは、必ず a の部分を持つようにすること。中央部の b は、持たないように注意する。

**中折りユニット設置前の注意事項**  
マルチジョブトレイとセットで設置する場合は、中折りユニット設置後、マルチジョブトレイを設置すること。

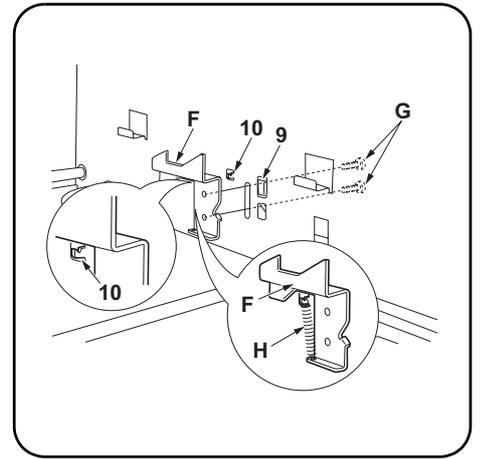
1. ビス (1) 4 本を外してガイド板 (2) を取り外す。
2. 左下軸 (3) をフィニッシャの側板から取り外す。



3. Open the front cover (4). Remove the screw (5) to remove the retainer (6).
4. While keeping the front cover (4) perpendicular to the copier, detach the cover (4) by raising it vertically in the direction of the arrow.



5. Remove two screws (7) and remove lower right cover (8).



6. Hook the backstop (F) onto the hook (9) inside of the finisher plate, and install using the two pins (G) from the outside.
7. Attach one end of the small spring (H) to the backstop (F) and hang the other end over the hook (10) inside the machine.

3. Ouvrir le couvercle avant (4). Retirer la vis (5) bloquant l'arrêtoir (6), puis retirer ce dernier.
4. Tout en maintenant le couvercle avant (4) perpendiculairement au copieur, retirer le couvercle (4) en le soulevant verticalement dans le sens de la flèche.

5. Déposer les deux vis (7) et le couvercle inférieur droit (8).

6. Accrocher la butée (F) sur le crochet (9) de la plaque du retoucheur et la fixer à l'aide des deux boulons (G) de l'extérieur.
7. Fixer une extrémité du petit ressort (H) à la butée (F) et accrocher l'autre extrémité sur le crochet (10) à l'intérieur de la machine.

3. Abra la cubierta frontal (4). Quite el tornillo (5) que asegura el retenedor (6).
4. Mientras mantiene la cubierta frontal (4) en posición perpendicular a la copiadora, despegue la cubierta (4) levantándola verticalmente hacia la dirección de la flecha.

5. Quite los dos tornillos (7) y la cubierta derecha inferior (8).

6. Enganche el dispositivo antirretroceso (F) en el gancho (9) que hay dentro de la placa del finalizador e instálelo usando los dos pernos (G) del exterior.
7. Anexe un extremo del resorte pequeño (H) al dispositivo antirretroceso (F) y enganche el otro extremo sobre el gancho (10) que se encuentra dentro de la máquina.

3. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung (4). Entfernen Sie die Schraube (5), um den Halter (6) abzunehmen.
4. Halten Sie die vordere Abdeckung (4) senkrecht zum Kopierer, und nehmen Sie die Abdeckung (4) ab, indem Sie diese vertikal in Pfeilrichtung anheben.

5. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (7) und nehmen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (8) heraus.

6. Hängen Sie den Anschlag (F) in den Haken (9) auf der Innenseite der Finisherplatte ein und beenden Sie die Installation mit Hilfe der beiden Stifte (G) von außen.
7. Bringen Sie ein Ende der kleinen Feder (H) am Anschlag (F) an, und hängen Sie das andere Ende über den Haken (10) im Innern des Gerätes.

3. Aprire il pannello anteriore (4). Rimuovere la vite (5) di bloccaggio del fermo (6), quindi il fermo stesso.
4. Mantenendo il pannello anteriore (4) in posizione perpendicolare rispetto alla fotocopiatrice, staccare il pannello (4) sollevandolo verticalmente, in direzione della freccia.

5. Rimuovere le due viti (7) e quindi rimuovere il pannello destro inferiore (8).

6. Agganciare il blocco del senso opposto (F) al gancio (9) all'interno della piastra della finitrice e installarlo usando i due piedini (G) dall'esterno.
7. Fissare un'estremità della molla piccolo (H) al blocco del senso opposto (F) e sospendere l'altra estremità sul gancio (10) all'interno della macchina.

3. 打开前盖板(4)。卸下螺钉(5)以便拆卸固定护圈(6)。
4. 将前盖板(4)直角竖起，边按箭头方向垂直抬起，边卸下前盖板(4)。

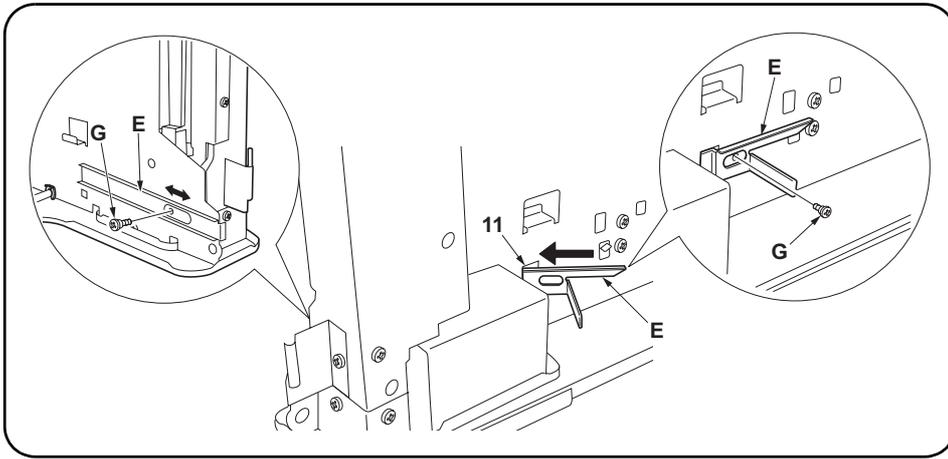
5. 取下2个螺钉(7)和右下盖板(8)。

6. 将挡板(F)钩挂在装订器前侧板的内侧钩(9)上，然后用2个销(G)从外侧安装。
7. 将弹簧(小)(H)的单独安装到挡板(F)上，将另一侧挂到机器内侧的百页板(10)上。

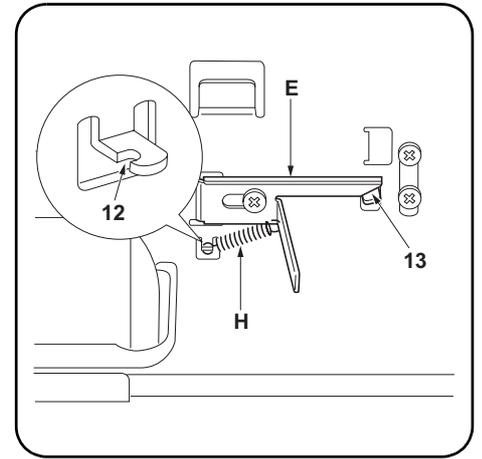
3. 前カバー(4)を開け、固定ビス(5)1本を外して取り付け金具(6)を外す。
4. 前カバー(4)を直角にして、矢印の方向に垂直に持ち上げながら前カバー(4)を取り外す。

5. ビス(7)2本を外して右下カバー(8)を取り外す。

6. 当たり板(F)をフィニッシャ前側板の内側ツメ(9)に引っかけてピン(G)2本で外側から取り付ける。
7. 当たり板(F)にバネ(小)(H)の片方を取り付けてもう片方のバネ(小)(H)を機械内側の切り起こし(10)に引っかける。



8. Fit in the release lever actuating plate (E) from the front side of the machine to the hole (11) and fix with two pins (G). Then, make sure that the release lever actuating plate (E) slides leftward and rightward.



9. Attach one end of the small spring (H) to the release lever actuating plate (E) and hang the other end over the hook (12) on the side plate.  
10. Coat the release lever actuating plate (E) with TEMP1 or the similar grease in the indicated area (13).

8. Insérer la plaque de commande du levier de dégagement (E) du côté avant de la machine dans l'orifice (11), puis fixer à l'aide des deux aiguilles (G). Ensuite, s'assurer que la plaque de commande du levier de dégagement (E) se déplace vers la gauche et vers la droite.

9. Fixer une extrémité du petit ressort (H) à la plaque de commande du levier de dégagement (E) et accrocher l'autre extrémité sur le crochet (12) se trouvant sur plaque latérale.  
10. Enduire la plaque de commande du levier de dégagement (E) de TEMP1 ou d'un enduit similaire sur la zone indiquée (13).

8. Inserte la placa de maniobra de la palanca de liberación (E) del lado delantero de la máquina en el hueco (11) y fíjela utilizando dos pernos (G). Luego, asegúrese de que la placa de maniobra de la palanca de liberación (E) se deslice tanto hacia la izquierda como hacia la derecha.

9. Anexe un extremo del resorte pequeño (H) a la placa de maniobra de la palanca de liberación (E) y enganche el otro extremo sobre el gancho (12) ubicado en la placa lateral.  
10. Cubra la placa de maniobra de la palanca de liberación (E) con TEMP1 o una grasa similar en el área indicada (13).

8. Führen Sie die Lösehebel-Antriebsscheibe (E) von der Vorderseite der Maschine in das Loch (11) ein, und sichern Sie sie mit zwei Stiften (G). Stellen Sie dann sicher, daß die Lösehebel-Antriebsscheibe (E) sich nach links und rechts schieben läßt.

9. Bringen Sie eine der kleinen Federn (H) an die Lösehebel-Antriebsscheibe (E) an, und hängen Sie das andere Ende über den Haken (12) auf der Seitenplatte.  
10. Schmier Sie die Lösehebel-Antriebsscheibe (E) im angezeigten Bereich (13) mit TEMP1 oder ähnlichem Schmierfett.

8. Inserire la piastra di azionamento della leva di rilascio (E) dalla parte anteriore della macchina nel foro (11) e fissare con due piedini (G). Verificare quindi che la piastra di azionamento della leva di rilascio (E) scivoli verso destra e verso sinistra.

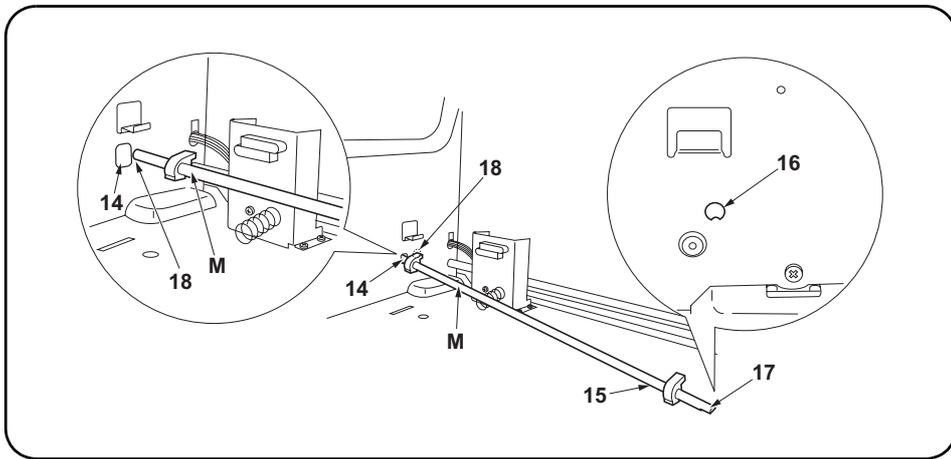
9. Fissare un'estremità della molla piccolo (H) alla piastra di azionamento della leva di rilascio (E) e sospendere l'altra estremità sul gancio (12) che si trova sulla piastra laterale.  
10. Lubrificare la piastra di azionamento della leva di rilascio (E) con TEMP1 o con un lubrificante simile, nell'area indicata (13).

8. 将释放杆工作板(E)从机器内侧的孔(11)插入,用2颗销(G)安装。安装后,确认释放杆工作板(E)是否左右滑动。

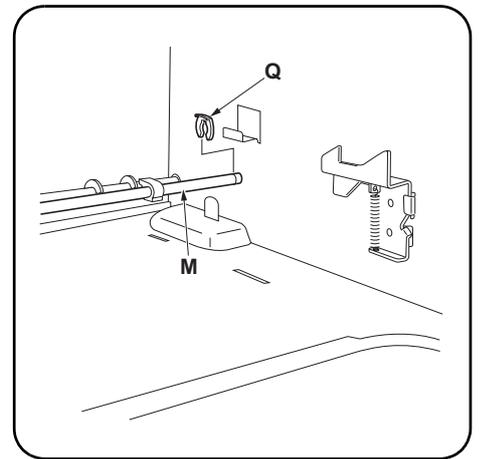
9. 将弹簧(小)(H)的一侧安装到释放杆工作板(E)上,将另一侧挂到机器内侧的百页板(12)上。  
10. 将隔热涂料 Temp 1 或类似品涂到释放杆工作板(E)的(13)部分。

8. 解除レバー作動板 (E) を機械前側から穴 (11) に挿入してピン (G) 2 本で取り付ける。取り付け後、解除レバー作動板 (E) が左右にスライドするか確認する。

9. バネ(小)(H)の片方を解除レバー作動板(E)に取り付けてもう片方は、側板の切り起こし(12)に引っかける。  
10. 解除レバー作動板(E)の(13)部分にテンプ1または類似品を塗る。



11. Fit in one end of the release pole assembly (M) to the square bypass hole (14) and the other end (15) to the hole (16) with the projection, with the D-cut (17) of the release pole assembly (M) aligned with the projection.
12. Insert the end of the release pole assembly (M) already inserted through the square bypass hole (14) into the mounting hole (18).



13. Fit the medium stop ring (Q) onto the release pole assembly (M). Be sure that the release pole assembly (M) can rotate slightly.

11. Insérer une extrémité de l'assemblage du pôle de dégagement (M) dans l'orifice de dérivation carré (14) et l'autre extrémité (15) dans l'orifice (16) ayant une projection, la coupe en D (17) de l'assemblage (M) aligné sur la projection.
12. Insérer l'extrémité de l'assemblage du pôle de dégagement (M), préalablement inséré dans l'orifice de dérivation carré (14), dans l'orifice de fixation (18).

13. Fixer le médian anneau de butée (Q) sur l'assemblage du pôle de dégagement (M). Ensuite, s'assurer que l'assemblage (M) peut pivoter légèrement.

11. Inserte un extremo del ensamble del polo de liberación (M) en el hueco de desvío cuadrado (14) y el otro extremo (15) en el hueco (16) con la proyección, manteniendo el corte D (17) del ensamble del polo de liberación (M) alineado con la proyección.
12. Inserte el extremo del ensamble del polo de liberación (M) ya insertado a través del hueco de desvío cuadrado (14) en el hueco de montaje (18).

13. Encaje el anillo tope mediano (Q) en el ensamble del polo de liberación (M). Luego, asegúrese de que el ensamble del polo de liberación (M) pueda rotar levemente.

11. Führen Sie ein Ende des Lösestangen-Bausatzes (M) in das quadratische Bypassloch (14) und das andere Ende (15) in das Loch (16) mit dem Vorsprung, wobei der D-Ausschnitt (17) auf dem Lösestangen-Bausatz (M) mit dem Vorsprung ausgerichtet wird.
12. Setzen Sie das bereits durch das quadratische Bypassloch (14) eingeführte Ende des Lösestangen-Bausatzes (M) in das Montierloch (18) ein.

13. Bringen Sie den mittlerer Stoppring (Q) auf dem Lösestangen-Bausatz (M) an. Stellen Sie danach sicher, daß der Lösestangen-Bausatz (M) sich leicht drehen läßt.

11. Inserire un'estremità del gruppo polo di rilascio (M) nel foro di by-pass quadrato (14) e l'altra estremità (15) nel foro (16) con la sporgenza, col taglio a D (17) del gruppo polo di rilascio (M) allineato alla sporgenza.
12. Inserire l'estremità del gruppo polo di rilascio (M), già inserita nel foro di by-pass quadrato (14), nel foro di montaggio (18).

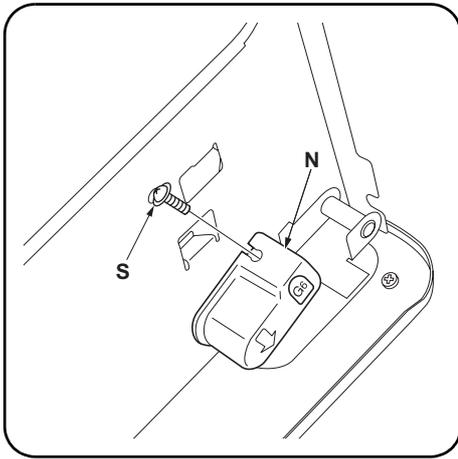
13. Fissare l'anello di arresto medio (Q) sul gruppo polo di rilascio (M). Verificare quindi che il gruppo polo di rilascio (M) ruoti senza difficoltà.

11. 将释放轴组件(M)插入四角放出孔(14), 将其另一侧(15)插入有凸起的孔(16)。此时, 将释放轴组件(M)的D切纹(17)对准凸起的孔(16)。
12. 将释放轴(M)从四角放出孔(14)插入到安装孔(18)。

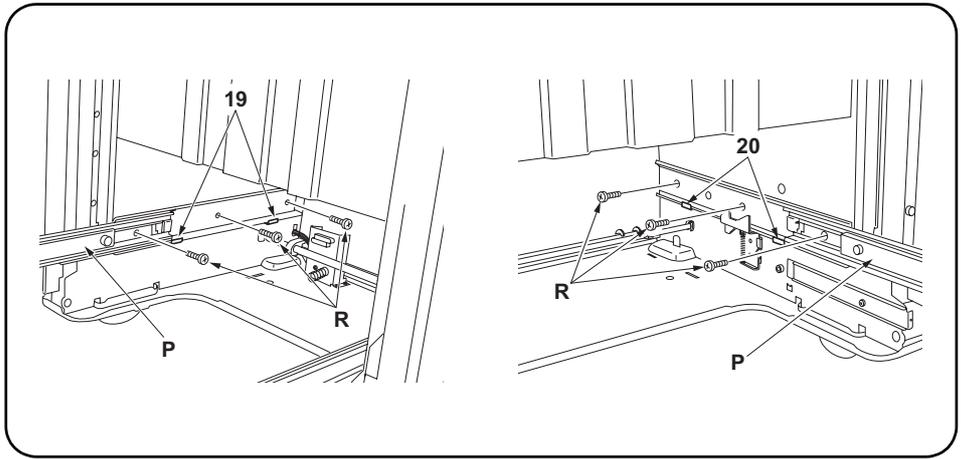
13. 将止动环(中)(Q)安装到释放轴组件(M)上。安装后, 装订器确认释放轴(M)是否可稍微转动。

11. 解除軸組立 (M) を四角の逃がし穴 (14) に差し込んで片方 (15) を突起のある穴 (16) に解除軸組立 (M) のDカット (17) を合わせて差し込む。
12. 解除軸組立 (M) を四角の逃がし穴 (14) から取り付け穴 (18) に差し込む。

13. ストップリング(中)(Q)を解除軸組立(M)に取り付ける。取り付け後、解除軸組立(M)が少しだけ回転することを確認する。



**14.** Secure the release handle (N) to the release pole assembly at the machine front side with the M4 x 10 TP screw (S).



**15.** Place the slider (P) on the projections (19) on the finisher rear side-plate and secure with three M4 x 8S Tight Bind screws (R).  
Fix the M4 x 8S Tight Bind screws (R) from the round holes on the eject side of the finisher.

**16.** Place the slider (P) on the projections (20) on the finisher front side-plate and secure with three M4 x 8S Tight Bind screws (R).  
Fix the M4 x 8S Tight Bind screws (R) from the round holes on the eject side of the finisher.

**14.** Fixer la poignée de dégagement (N) à l'assemblage du pôle de dégagement, à l'avant de la machine, à l'aide de la vis en M4 x 10 TP (S).

**15.** Placer la règle (P) sur les projections (19) figurant sur la plaque latérale arrière du retoucheur et la fixer à l'aide des trois vis de raccordement M4 x 8S (R).  
Insérer les vis de raccordement M4 x 8S (R) dans les orifices arrondis figurant sur le côté éjection du retoucheur.

**16.** Placer la règle (P) sur les projections (20) figurant sur la plaque latérale avant du retoucheur et la fixer à l'aide des trois vis de raccordement M4 x 8S (R).  
Insérer les vis de raccordement M4 x 8S (R) dans les orifices arrondis figurant sur le côté éjection du retoucheur.

**14.** Anexe la manilla de liberación (N) al ensamble del polo de liberación en el lado frontal de la máquina usando el tornillo de M4 x 10 TP (S).

**15.** Coloque el deslizador (P) sobre las proyecciones (19) de la placa lateral posterior y asegúrelo con tres tornillos de cierre hermético M4 x 8S (R).  
Inserte los tornillos de cierre hermético M4 x 8S (R) desde los huecos redondos ubicados en el lado de expulsión del finalizador.

**16.** Coloque el deslizador (P) sobre las proyecciones (20) de la placa lateral frontal y asegúrelo con tres tornillos de cierre hermético M4 x 8S (R).  
Inserte los tornillos de cierre hermético M4 x 8S (R) desde los huecos redondos ubicados en el lado de expulsión del finalizador.

**14.** Bringen Sie den Lösegriff (N) am Lösestangen-Bausatz an der Gerätevorderseite mittels der M4 x 10 TP Schraube (S) an.

**15.** Platzieren Sie den Schieber (P) auf die Vorsprünge (19) auf der hinteren Seitenplatte des Finishers und befestigen Sie ihn mit drei M4 x 8S Verbundschrauben (R).  
Befestigen Sie die M4 x 8S Verbundschrauben (R) durch die runden Löcher auf der Auswurfseite des Finishers.

**16.** Platzieren Sie den Schieber (P) auf die Vorsprünge (20) auf der vorderen Seitenplatte des Finishers und befestigen Sie ihn mit drei M4 x 8S Verbundschrauben (R).  
Befestigen Sie die M4 x 8S Verbundschrauben (R) durch die runden Löcher auf der Auswurfseite des Finishers.

**14.** Fissare l'impugnatura di rilascio (N) al gruppo polo di rilascio sul lato anteriore della macchina, con la vite di TP M4 x 10 (S).

**15.** Posizionare il cursore (P) sulle sporgenze (19) sulla piastra laterale posteriore della finitrice e bloccarlo con le tre viti (R) a serraggio stretto M4 x 8S.  
Inserire le viti (R) a serraggio stretto M4 x 8S dai fori rotondi sul lato di espulsione della finitrice.

**16.** Posizionare il cursore (P) sulle sporgenze (20) sulla piastra laterale anteriore della finitrice e bloccarlo con le tre viti (R) a serraggio stretto M4 x 8S.  
Inserire le viti (R) a serraggio stretto M4 x 8S dai fori rotondi sul lato di espulsione della finitrice.

**14.** 用1顆M4×10 TP 螺釘(S)將解開手柄(N)安裝到解開軸組件的機器前側部分。

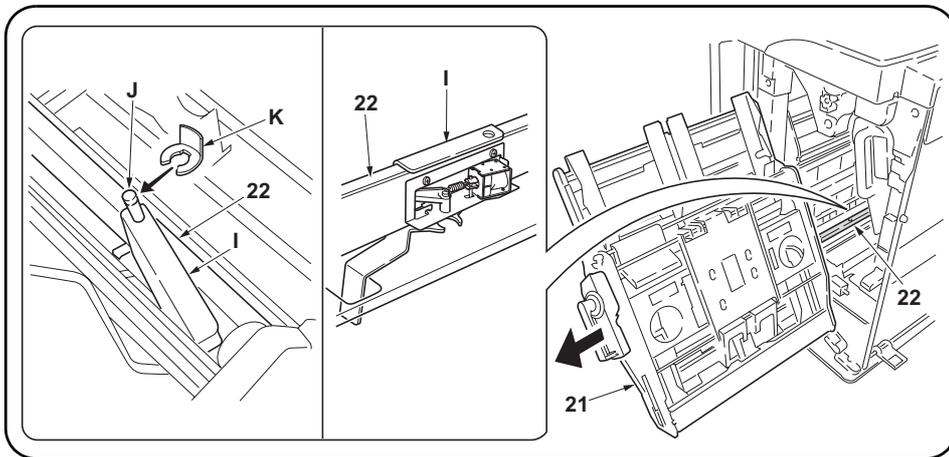
**15.** 將滑板(P)放在裝訂器後側板的凸起(19)上, 然后用3顆M4×8S型緊固連接螺釘(R)將它固定。  
將M4×8S型緊固連接螺釘(R)固定在裝訂器出紙側的圓孔。

**16.** 將滑板(P)放在裝訂器前側板的凸起(20)上, 然后用3顆M4×8S型緊固連接螺釘(R)將它固定。  
將M4×8S型緊固連接螺釘(R)固定在裝訂器出紙側的圓孔。

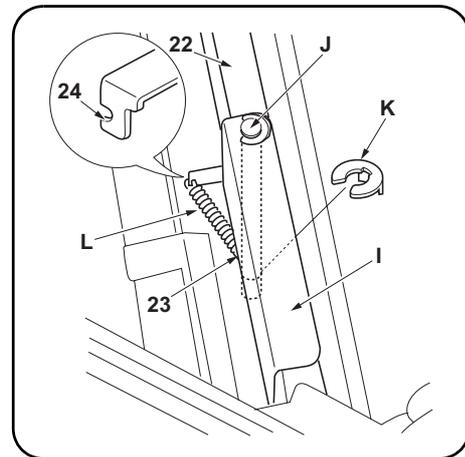
**14.** 解除軸組立的機械前側部分に解除取手(N)をM4×10 TPビス(S)1本で取り付ける。

**15.** スライダ(P)をフィニッシャ後側板の突起物(19)の上に載せてM4×8Sタイトバインドビス(R)3本で取り付ける。  
M4×8Sタイトバインドビス(R)の取り付けは、フィニッシャ排出側の丸穴から固定すること。

**16.** スライダ(P)をフィニッシャ前側板の突起物(20)の上に載せてM4×8Sタイトバインドビス(R)3本で取り付ける。  
M4×8Sタイトバインドビス(R)の取り付けは、フィニッシャ排出側の丸穴から固定すること。



17. Pull out the intermediate tray of the finisher (21).
18. Fit the large stop ring (K) onto the unit lock rod (J).
19. Attach the unit lock hook (I) to the lower guide stay (22) with the unit lock rod (J).



20. Fit the large stop ring (K) onto the lower part of the unit lock rod (J).
21. Hang one end of the large spring (L) over the hook (23) on the unit lock hook (I) and the other end over the hook (24) on the guide stay (22).
22. Insert the intermediate tray of the finisher (21). Then install the lower right cover (8) in its original position.

17. Retirer le plateau intermédiaire du retoucheur (21).
18. Fixer le grand anneau de butée (K) sur la tige de verrouillage de l'unité (J).
19. Fixer le crochet de verrouillage de l'unité (I) au hauban du guide inférieur (22) à l'aide de la tige de verrouillage de l'unité (J).

20. Fixer le grand anneau de butée (K) sur la partie inférieure de la tige de verrouillage de l'unité (J).
21. Accrocher une extrémité du grand ressort (L) au crochet (23) de le crochet de verrouillage de l'unité (I) et l'autre extrémité au crochet (24) du hauban du guide (22).
22. Insérer le plateau intermédiaire du retoucheur (21). Reposer ensuite le couvercle inférieur droit (8) dans sa position d'origine.

17. Hale la bandeja intermedia del finalizador (21).
18. Encaje el anillo tope grande (K) en la varilla del cierre de la unidad (J).
19. Anexe el gancho del cierre de la unidad (I) a la base de la guía inferior (22) usando la varilla del cierre de la unidad (J).

20. Encaje el anillo tope grande (K) en la parte inferior de la varilla del cierre de la unidad (J).
21. Enganche un extremo del resorte grande (L) en el gancho (23) del gancho del cierre de la unidad (I) y el otro extremo en el gancho (24) de la base de la guía (22).
22. Inserte la bandeja intermedia del finalizador (21). Después, instale la cubierta derecha inferior (8) en su posición original.

17. Ziehen Sie das Papierzwischenmagazin des Finishers (21) heraus.
18. Bringen Sie den großen Stoppring (K) auf der Einheit-Sperrstange (J) an.
19. Bringen Sie den Einheit-Sperrhaken (I) mittels der Einheit-Sperrstange (J) an der unteren Führungsstütze (22) an.

20. Bringen Sie den großen Stoppring (K) an den unteren Teil der Einheit-Sperrstange (J) an.
21. Hängen Sie ein Ende der grossen Feder (L) über den Haken (23) auf dem Einheit-Sperrhaken (I) und das andere Ende über den Haken (24) auf der Führungsstütze (22).
22. Setzen Sie das Papierzwischenmagazin des Finishers (21) ein. Bringen Sie dann die untere rechte Abdeckung (8) wieder in der ursprünglichen Position an.

17. Estrarre il vassoio intermedio del finisher (21).
18. Inserire l'anello di arresto grande (K) nella barra di bloccaggio dell'unità (J).
19. Fissare il gancio di bloccaggio dell'unità (I) al puntello della guida inferiore (22) con la barra di bloccaggio (J).

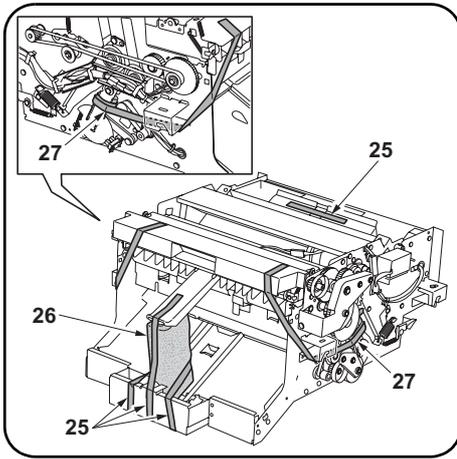
20. Inserire l'anello di arresto grande (K) nella parte inferiore della barra di bloccaggio dell'unità (J).
21. Posizionare un'estremità della molla grande (L) al di sopra del gancio (23), sul gancio di bloccaggio dell'unità (I) e l'altra estremità sul gancio (24) che si trova sul puntello della guida (22).
22. Inserire il vassoio intermedio della finitrice (21). Quindi installare il pannello destro inferiore (8) nella sua posizione originaria.

17. 拉出装订器的中间托盘(21)。
18. 将止动环(大)(K)安装到装置锁紧轴(J)上。
19. 用装置锁紧轴(J)将装置锁紧挂钩部(I)安装到下侧的导向支撑部件(22)上。

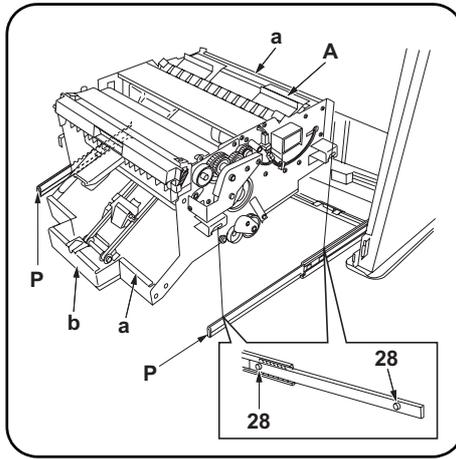
20. 将止动环(大)(K)安装到装置锁紧轴(J)下侧。
21. 将弹簧(大)(L)的一侧挂到装置锁紧挂钩部(I)的百页板(23)上,将另一侧挂到导向支撑部件(22)的百页板(24)上。
22. 插入装订器(21)的中间托盘。然后将右下盖板(8)安装至原来的位置。

17. フィニッシャの中間トレイ(21)を引き出す。
18. ユニットロック軸(J)にストップリング(大)(K)を取り付ける。
19. ユニットロック軸(J)でユニットロックフック(I)を下側のガイドステー(22)に取り付ける。

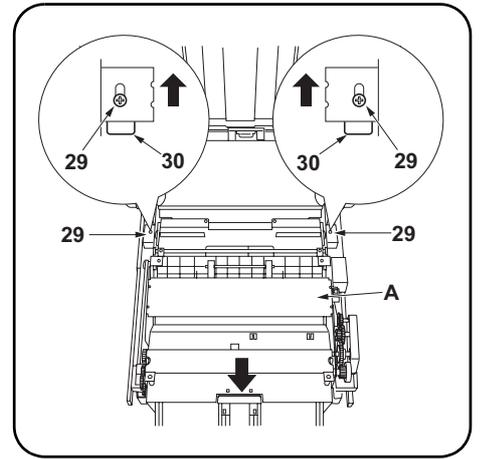
20. ユニットロック軸(J)の下側にストップリング(大)(K)を取り付ける。
21. バネ(大)(L)の片方をユニットロックフック(I)の切り起こし(23)に引っかけてもう片方をガイドステー(22)の切り起こし(24)に引っかける。
22. フィニッシャの中間トレイ(21)を挿入する。右下カバー(8)を元通り取り付け。



**23.** Remove the three fixing tapes (25) and the cushioning material (26). Remove the fixing tape (27) and cushioning materials provided on the centerfold unit's front and rear side plates.



**24.** Pull the left and right sliders (P) out until they stop. Install the centerfold unit (A) positioning to the pins (28) of the sliders. Hold the centerfold unit by "a" indicated in the illustration. Do not hold it by "b" at the center of the unit.



**25.** Slide the centerfold unit (A) in the direction of the arrow.  
**26.** Loosen the two screws (29) to push the retainer (30) in the direction of the arrow and retighten the screws (29).

**23.** Enlevez les trois bandes de fixation (25) et le matériau d'emballage (26). Enlevez la bande de fixation (27) et le matériau d'emballage situés sur les panneaux latéraux avant et arrière de l'unité pour pages centrales dépliées.

**24.** Tirer sur les règles gauche et droite (P) jusqu'à leur arrêt. Fixer l'unité pour pages centrales dépliées (A) sur les pinces (28) des règles. Tenir l'unité par le point "a" indiqué sur l'illustration. Ne pas la tenir par le point "b" au centre de l'unité.

**25.** Déplacer l'unité pour pages centrales dépliées (A) dans le sens de la flèche.  
**26.** Relâcher les deux vis (29) et pousser la butée (30) dans le sens de la flèche puis resserrer les vis (29).

**23.** Quite las tres cintas de fijación (25) y el material de amortiguamiento (26). Quite la cinta de fijación (27) y los materiales de amortiguamiento de las placas lateral frontal y posterior central de la unidad de plegado.

**24.** Hale los deslizadores izquierdo y derecho (P) hasta su extensión máxima. Anexe la unidad de plegado (A) a los pernos (28) de los deslizadores. Sujete la unidad de plegado por "a" indicado en el gráfico. No la sujete por "b" ubicado en el centro de la unidad.

**25.** Deslice la unidad de plegado (A) hacia la dirección de la flecha.  
**26.** Afloje los dos tornillos (29) y empuje el retenedor (30) en la dirección de la flecha y vuelva a apretar los tornillos (29).

**23.** Entfernen Sie die drei Arretierklebebänder (25) und das Polstermaterial (26). Entfernen Sie das Arretierklebeband (27) und das Polstermaterial an den vorderen und hinteren Seitenplatten der Mittelfalteinheit.

**24.** Ziehen Sie die linken und rechten Schieber (P) bis zum Anschlag heraus. Installieren Sie die Mittelfalteinheit (A), die Positionierung erfolgt über die Stifte (28) der Schieber. Fassen Sie die Mittelfalt-Einheit wie in der Abbildung dargestellt an "a" an. Fassen Sie sie nicht an "b" in der Mitte der Einheit an.

**25.** Schieben Sie die Mittelfalt-Einheit (A) in Pfeilrichtung.  
**26.** Lösen Sie die zwei Schrauben (29), und schieben Sie den Halter (30) in Pfeilrichtung. Ziehen Sie dann die Schrauben (29) wieder fest.

**23.** Rimuovere i tre nastri di fissaggio (25) e il materiale di imbottitura (26). Rimuovere il nastro di fissaggio (27) e i materiali di imbottitura presenti sulle piastre laterali posteriore e anteriore dell'unità per piegatura centrale.

**24.** Spingere verso l'esterno i cursori destro e sinistro (P), fino al loro arresto. Fissare l'unità per piegatura centrale (A) sui piedini (28) dei cursori. Tenere l'unità per piegatura centrale per il punto "a" indicato nell'illustrazione. Non tenerla per il punto "b" al centro dell'unità.

**25.** Far scivolare l'unità per piegatura centrale (A) in direzione della freccia.  
**26.** Allentare le due viti (29) e spingere il fermo (30) in direzione della freccia, quindi stringere nuovamente le viti (29).

**23.** 取下 3 处固定胶带 (25) 以及缓冲材料 (26)。取下分别位于折叠装置前、后侧板上的固定胶带 (27) 和缓冲材料。

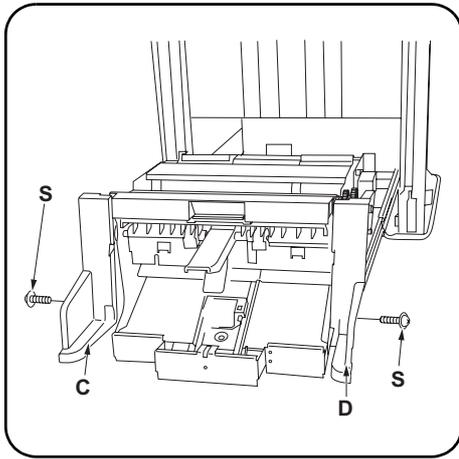
**24.** 将左右滑板 (P) 拉出直到停住为止。安装折叠装置 (A) 并通过滑板的销钉 (28) 定位。拿折叠装置时, 注意一定要拿 a 部, 不要拿中央部 b。

**25.** 按箭头方向移动折叠装置 (A)。  
**26.** 松动 2 颗螺钉 (29), 按箭头方向压下固定板 (30), 拧紧螺钉 (29)。

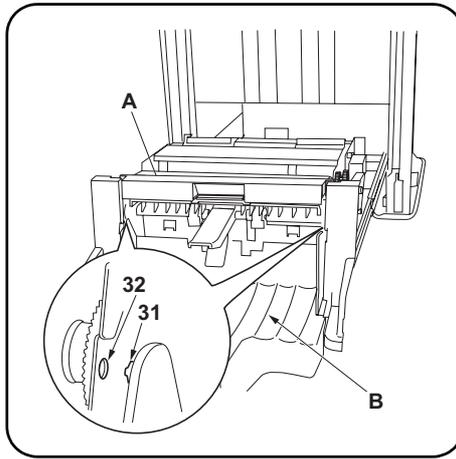
**23.** イラストの固定テープ (25) 3 本、緩衝材 (26) 1 個を外す。中折りユニットの前・後側板の固定テープ (27) 及び緩衝材を外す。

**24.** 左右のスライダ (P) を最後まで引いて各スライダのピン (28) に合わせて中折りユニット (A) を取り付ける。中折りユニットを持つときは、必ず a の部分を持つようにすること。中央部の b は、持たないように注意する。

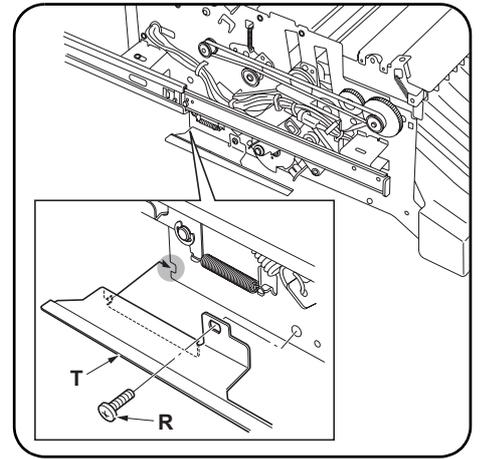
**25.** 矢印の方向に中折りユニット (A) をずらす。  
**26.** ビス (29) 2 本を緩めて固定板 (30) を矢印の方向に押し込んで、ビス (29) を締め付ける。



27. Fit the left cover (C) and right cover (D) into the rectangular hole on each side of the center fold unit, and secure each cover with the M4 x 10 TP screw (S).



28. Attach the eject tray (B) to the centerfold unit (A) by fitting the projection (31) of the tray into the hole (32) inside the unit.



29. Fit in the projection of the douser detecting PI (T) with the cutout on the centerfold unit's rear side plate, and secure them with the M4 x 8S Tight Bind screw (R).  
When inserting the centerfold unit, confirm that the douser detecting PI (T) does not touch the finisher's folding unit sensor.

27. Placer les couvercles gauche (C) et droit (D) dans l'orifice rectangulaire se trouvant de chaque côté de l'unité pour pages centrales dépliantes et fixer chaque couvercle à l'aide de la vis TP M4 x 10 (S).

28. Fixer le plateau d'éjection (B) à l'unité pour pages centrales dépliantes (A) en insérant la projection (31) du plateau dans l'orifice (32) se trouvant à l'intérieur de l'unité.

29. Placez la partie saillante de la plaque d'ombrage (T) sur la partie découpée du panneau latéral arrière de l'unité pour pages centrales dépliantes et fixez-les à l'aide d'une vis de raccordement M4 x 8S (R).  
Lors de l'insertion de l'unité pour pages centrales dépliantes, vérifiez que la plaque d'ombrage (T) n'entre pas en contact avec le capteur de l'unité de pliage du retoucheur.

27. Encaja la cubierta izquierda (C) y la cubierta derecha (D) en el hueco rectangular que hay a ambos lados de la unidad de plegado, y asegure cada cubierta con el tornillo de TP M4 x 10 (S).

28. Anexe la bandeja de expulsión (B) a la unidad de plegado (A) al insertar la proyección (31) de la bandeja en el hueco (32) del interior de la unidad.

29. Enganche el saliente de la detección de pantalla paraluz PI (T) con el corte de la placa lateral posterior central de la unidad de plegado y fíjelo mediante el tornillo de cierre hermético M4 x 8S (R).  
Cuando introduzca la unidad de plegado, asegúrese de que la detección de pantalla paraluz PI (T) no esté en contacto con el sensor de la unidad de plegado del finalizador.

27. Setzen Sie die linke Abdeckung (C) und die rechte Abdeckung (D) in die rechteckigen Öffnungen an jeder Seite der Mittelfalteinheit ein und befestigen Sie jede Abdeckung mit der M4 x 10 TP-Schraube (S).

28. Bringen Sie das Auswurftray (B) an die Mittelfalt-Einheit (A) an, indem Sie den Vorsprung (31) des Fachs in das Loch (32) im Innern der Einheit einführen.

29. Stecken Sie die Nase der Douser Detecting PI (T) in den Ausschnitt am hinteren Blech der Mittelfalteinheit, und sichern Sie sie mit einer M4 x 8S Verbundschraube (R).  
Stellen Sie beim Einsetzen der Mittelfalteinheit sicher, dass die Douser Detecting PI (T) den Sensor der Finisher-Falteinheit nicht berührt.

27. Inserire il pannello sinistro (C) e il pannello destro (D) nel foro rettangolare su ciascun lato dell'unità per piegatura centrale, quindi fissare ciascun pannello con la vite (S) M4 x 10 TP.

28. Fissare la slitta di espulsione (B) all'unità per piegatura centrale (A) inserendo la sporgenza (31) della slitta nel foro (32) all'interno dell'unità.

29. Impegnare la sporgenza del PI paralucente (T) con l'intaglio della piastra laterale posteriore dell'unità per piegatura centrale, e fissare per mezzo di una vite a serraggio stretto M4 x 8S (R).  
Nell'inserire l'unità per piegatura centrale, accertarsi che il PI paralucente (T) non tocchi il sensore dell'unità di piegatura della finitrice.

27. 将左盖板(C)和右盖板(D)装入折叠装置两侧的矩形孔内, 然后用 M4 × 10TP 螺钉(S)将每个盖板固定。

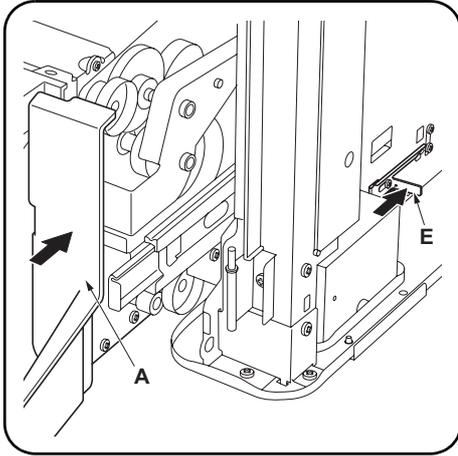
28. 将出纸托盘(B)的凸起物(31)插入折叠装置(A)内侧孔(32)安装。

29. 使遮光检测 PI(T) 凸起部卡进折叠装置后侧板的缺口, 并用一颗 M4 × 8S 紧固连接螺钉(R)将它们固定。  
当插入折叠装置时, 请确认遮光检测 PI(T) 没有接触装订器的折叠装置传感器。

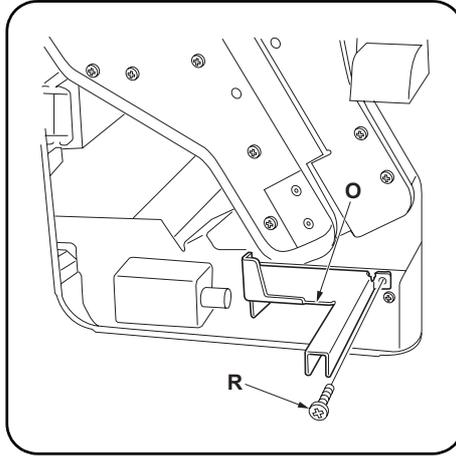
27. カバー左 (C) とカバー右 (D) を中折りユニットの左右の角穴にはめて、M4 × 10 TP ビス (S) 各 1 本で取り付ける。

28. 排出トレイ (B) の突起物 (31) を中折りユニット (A) の内側の穴 (32) に差し込んで取り付ける。

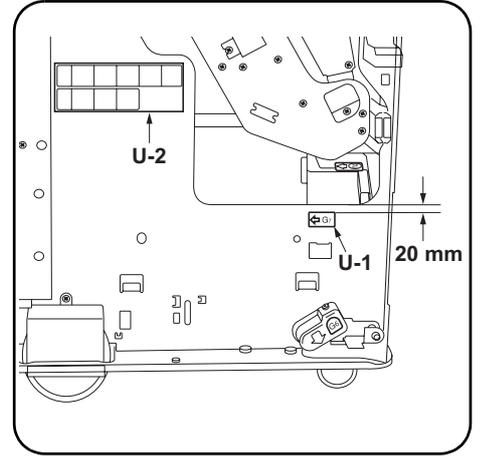
29. 遮光板検知 PI (T) の切り起こしを中折りユニットの後側板の切り欠きに合わせて、M4 × 8S タイトバインドビス (R) 1 本で取り付ける。  
\* 中折りユニットを押し込む際、遮光板検知 PI (T) がフィニッシャの折りユニット有無センサに接触しないことを確認する。



30. Push the release lever actuating plate (E).  
31. Push in the centerfold unit (A) until it stops.



32. Secure the unit transport handle (O) with the M4 x 8S Tight Bind screw (R).



33. After cleaning each area with alcohol, adhere the following labels from the label sheet (U) at the locations shown in the illustration: (U)-1 (G7), (U)-2.

30. Pousser la plaque de commande du levier de dégagement (E).  
31. Pousser l'unité pour pages centrales dépliées (A) jusqu'à son arrêt.

32. Fixer la poignée de transport de l'unité (O) à l'aide d'une vis de raccordement M4 x 8S (R).

33. Après avoir nettoyé chaque zone à l'alcool, apposer les étiquettes suivantes du feuillet d'étiquettes (U) aux emplacements indiqués dans l'illustration : (U)-1 (G7), (U)-2.

30. Empuje la placa de manobra de la palanca de liberación (E).  
31. Empuje la unidad de plegado (A) hasta que pare.

32. Anexe la manilla de la unidad de transporte (O) usando un tornillo de cierre hermético M4 x 8S (R).

33. Después de limpiar todas las zonas con alcohol, despegue de la hoja de etiquetas (U) las etiquetas siguientes, y péguelas en los sitios que se indican en la ilustración: (U)-1 (G7), (U)-2.

30. Schieben Sie die Lösehebel-Antriebscheibe (E).  
31. Schieben Sie die Mittelfalt-Einheit (A) bis zum Anschlag.

32. Bringen Sie den Einheit-Transportgriff (O) mit einer M4 x 8S Verbundschraube (R).

33. Nachdem Sie alle Flächen mit Alkohol gereinigt haben, kleben Sie bitte die folgenden Aufkleber vom Aufkleberbogen (U) an die in der Abbildung angegebenen Stellen: (U)-1 (G7), (U)-2.

30. Spingere la piastra di azionamento della leva di rilascio (E).  
31. Spingere verso l'interno l'unità per piegatura centrale (A) fino al suo arresto.

32. Fissare l'impugnatura per il trasporto dell'unità (O) con una vite a serraggio stretto M4 x 8S (R).

33. Dopo aver pulito ciascuna zona con alcol, applicare le seguenti etichette del foglio di etichette (U) sui punti mostrati nell'illustrazione: (U)-1 (G7), (U)-2.

30. 按下释放杆工作板 (E)。  
31. 按下折叠装置 (A)，下压到最低部。

32. 用一颗 M4 × 8S 紧固连接螺钉 (R) 安装装置移动手柄 (O)。

33. 用酒精清洁各区域后，请在如图所示位置粘贴从标签纸上 (U) 撕下的下列标签：(U)-1 (G7)、(U)-2。

30. 解除レバー作動板 (E) を押す。  
31. 中折りユニット (A) を押して、最後まで押し込む。

32. M4 × 8S タイトバインドビス (R) 1 本でユニット移動取手 (O) を取り付ける。

33. ラベルシート (U) 内の (U)-1 (G7)、(U)-2 をイラストの位置にアルコール清掃後貼り付ける。

### Operation check

1. Make a test copy to check that the centerfold unit operates correctly.

### Adjustment of centerfold position

1. Make a test copy in centerfold mode. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes.  
A3, A4R, B4, LGR (11" × 17"), LTR (8.5" × 11"), LGL (8.5" × 14")

2. If the sheets are not folded at the correct position, perform maintenance mode U248 to make the following adjustments for each paper size.
3. Select SADDLE ADJUST mode.  
<Reference value>  
Distance from centerfold position: within ±3 mm

### Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'unité pour pages centrales dépliées.

### Réglage de la position pages centrales dépliées

1. Effectuez un test d'impression en mode pages centrales dépliées, et ce, pour chacun des formats papier suivants.  
A3, A4R, B4, LGR (11" × 17"), LTR (8,5" × 11", LGL (8,5" × 14")

2. Si les feuilles ne sont pas pliées correctement, utilisez le mode entretien U248 pour effectuer les réglages suivants pour chaque format papier.
3. Sélectionnez le mode SADDLE ADJUST (REGLAGE A CHEVAL).  
<Valeur de référence>  
Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliée: ±3 mm

### Comprobación operacional

1. Haga una copia de prueba para comprobar que la unidad de plegado funciona correctamente.

### Ajuste de la posición de plegado central

1. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de plegado central. Debe hacer una copia de prueba para cada uno de los siguientes tamaños de papel.  
A3, A4R, B4, LGR (11" × 17"), LTR (8,5" × 11", LGL (8,5" × 14")

2. Si las hojas no se pliegan en la posición correcta, lleve a cabo en modo de funcionamiento U248 para realizar los siguientes ajustes para cada tamaño de papel.
3. Seleccione el modo SADDLE ADJUST.  
<Valor de referencia >  
Distancia desde la posición de plegado: ±3 mm

### Betriebsprüfung

1. Machen Sie eine Testkopie, um zu prüfen, ob die Mittelfalt-Einheit ordnungsgemäß funktioniert.

### Mittelfaltposition justieren

1. Machen Sie ein Testkopie im Mittelfaltmodus. Testkopien müssen für jeder der folgenden Papierformate erstellt werden.  
A3, A4R, B4, LGR (11" × 17"), LTR (8,5" × 11", LGL (8,5" × 14")

2. Falls die Blätter nicht an der korrekten Position gefaltet sind, führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U248 durch, um die folgenden Justierungen für die einzelnen Papierformate vorzunehmen.
3. Wählen Sie den Modus SADDLE ADJUST.  
<Bezugswert>  
Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition: innerhalb von ±3 mm

### Controllo del funzionamento

1. Eseguire una copia di prova per controllare che l'unità per piegatura centrale funzioni correttamente.

### Regolazione della posizione piegatura centrale

1. Eseguire una copia di prova in fase piegatura centrale. Eseguire una copia di prova per ognuno dei seguenti formati carta.  
A3, A4R, B4, LGR (11" × 17"), LTR (8,5" × 11", LGL (8,5" × 14")

2. Se i fogli non vengono piegati in modo corretto, eseguire la fase di manutenzione U248, al fine di eseguire le seguenti regolazioni per ogni formato carta.
3. Selezionare la fase SADDLE ADJUST (REGOLA SELLA).  
<Valore di riferimento>  
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale: entro ±3 mm

### [ 确认動作 ]

1. 进行试印, 确认是否正常工作。

### [ 折页位置的调整 ]

1. 在折页模式下进行检测复印。必须对下列每种纸张尺寸分别进行检测复印。  
A3, A4R, B4, LGR (11" × 17"), LTR (8.5" × 11"), LGL (8.5" × 14")

2. 如果折页位置不正确, 请对每种纸张尺寸执行维修模式 U248 进行如下调整。
3. 选择 SADDLE ADJUST (鞍座调整) 模式。  
<标准值>  
距离折叠位置的距离: ±3mm 内

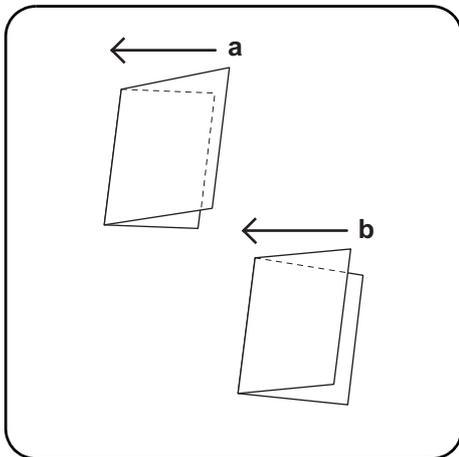
### [ 動作確認 ]

1. テストコピーを行って、正常に動作するか確認する。

### [ 中折り位置調整 ]

1. 以下の用紙を使用して、中折りモードで2枚折りにてテストコピーを行う。  
A3, A4R, B4, LGR (11" × 17")、  
LTR (8.5" × 11")、LGL (8.5" × 14")

2. 中折りの位置がずれている場合は、メンテナンスモード U248 を実行し、用紙サイズ別に次の調整を行う。
3. SADDLE ADJUST モードを選択する。  
<基準値> 中折り位置のずれ: ±3mm 以内



4. Set the value for each paper size.  
when the top side is wider (a): Increase the value.  
when the top side is narrower (b): Decrease the value.  
Setting range: -10 to +10, Default: 0  
Change per step: Approx 0.55 mm (for your guidance only)

5. Press the START key to confirm the value.  
6. Cancel the maintenance mode.  
You should also adjust saddle staple location (SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST) at this time. See the following for details.  
INSTALLATION GUIDE "DF-650(B)" (page 13 and 14)

4. Définissez la valeur pour chaque format papier.  
Lorsque le côté supérieur est plus large (a): augmentez la valeur.  
Lorsque le côté supérieur est plus étroit (b): diminuez la valeur.  
Marge de réglage: -10 à +10, par défaut: 0  
Modifiez le réglage progressivement: par pas de 0,55 mm environ (à titre indicatif)

5. Appuyez sur la touche START pour confirmer la valeur.  
6. Annulez le mode entretien.  
Il faut également régler la position d'agrafage à cheval (REGLAGE DE L'AGRAFAGE A CHEVAL).  
Consulter les guides suivants pour plus de détails.  
GUIDE D'INSTALLATION DU "DF-650(B)" (pages 13 et 14)

4. Ajuste el valor para cada tamaño de papel.  
cuando la parte superior es más ancha (a): Aumente el valor.  
cuando la parte superior es más estrecha (b): Disminuya el valor.  
Margen de ajuste: -10 a +10, Valor predeterminado: 0  
Modificación por cada paso: Aprox. 0,55 mm (sólo como guía)

5. Presione la tecla START para confirmar el valor.  
6. Cancele el modo de mantenimiento.  
Debería ajustar también la posición de grapado cóncavo (SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST) en este momento.  
Consulte los detalles siguientes.  
GUÍA DE INSTALACIÓN "DF-650(B)" (páginas 13 y 14)

4. Stellen Sie die entsprechenden Wert für jedes Papierformat ein.  
wenn die obere Hälfte breiter ist (a): Wert erhöhen.  
wenn die obere Hälfte schmaler ist (b): Werte verringern.  
Einstellungsbereich: -10 bis +10, Standard: 0  
Änderung pro Schritt: ca. 0,55 mm (nur zur Information)

5. Drücken Sie zur Bestätigung des Werts die Starttaste.  
6. Beenden Sie den Wartungsmodus.  
Auch die Position der SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST (Rückstichheftung) sollte jetzt justiert werden.  
Nähere Informationen finden Sie an folgenden Stellen.  
INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG "DF-650(B)" (Seite 13 und 14)

4. Impostare il valore per ogni formato carta.  
quando il margine superiore è più ampio (a): aumentare il valore.  
quando il margine superiore è più stretto (b): ridurre il valore.  
Campo di regolazione: -10 ... +10, default: 0  
Cambio per passo: circa 0,55 mm (solo a scopo di informativo)

5. Premere il tasto START per confermare il valore.  
6. Annullare la fase di manutenzione.  
A questo punto deve essere eseguita altresì la regolazione della posizione pinzatura a sella (REGOLA PINZATURA SELLA).  
Per i dettagli consultare le seguenti guide:  
GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE "DF-650(B)" (pagg. 13 e 14)

4. 根据不同的纸张尺寸来选择设定值。  
当上边较宽时 (a): 增大设定值。  
当上边较窄时 (b): 减小设定值。  
设定范围: -10 至 +10, 缺省值: 0  
调整步长: 约 0.55 mm (仅供参考)

5. 按开始键来确认设定值。  
6. 退出维修模式。  
此时还需要调节鞍式装订位置 (SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST)。  
详细情况请参见如下说明。  
• 安装说明 "DF-650(B)" (第 13 和 14 页)

4. 用紙サイズ別に設定値を選択する。  
排出紙の上面側が長い場合 (a): 設定値を上げる  
排出紙の上面側が短い場合 (b): 設定値を下げる  
設定範囲: -10 ~ +10 初期設定値: 0  
1 ステップの変化量: 約 0.55mm (参考値)

5. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。  
6. メンテナンスモードを解除する。  
中綴ジステープル位置調整 (SADDLE STAPLE ADJUST) も同時に調整をする。  
詳細は、下記参照。  
DF-650(B) 設置手順書 (13 ~ 14 ページ)

**English****NOTICE**

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-650(B)

---

**Français****AVIS**

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-650(B)

---

**Español****AVISO**

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-650(B)

---

**Deutsch****HINWEIS**

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-650(B)

---

**Italiano****NOTIFICA**

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-650(B)

---

**简体中文****注意**

本产品（附属部件）适用于以下复印机。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

式样：DF-650(B)

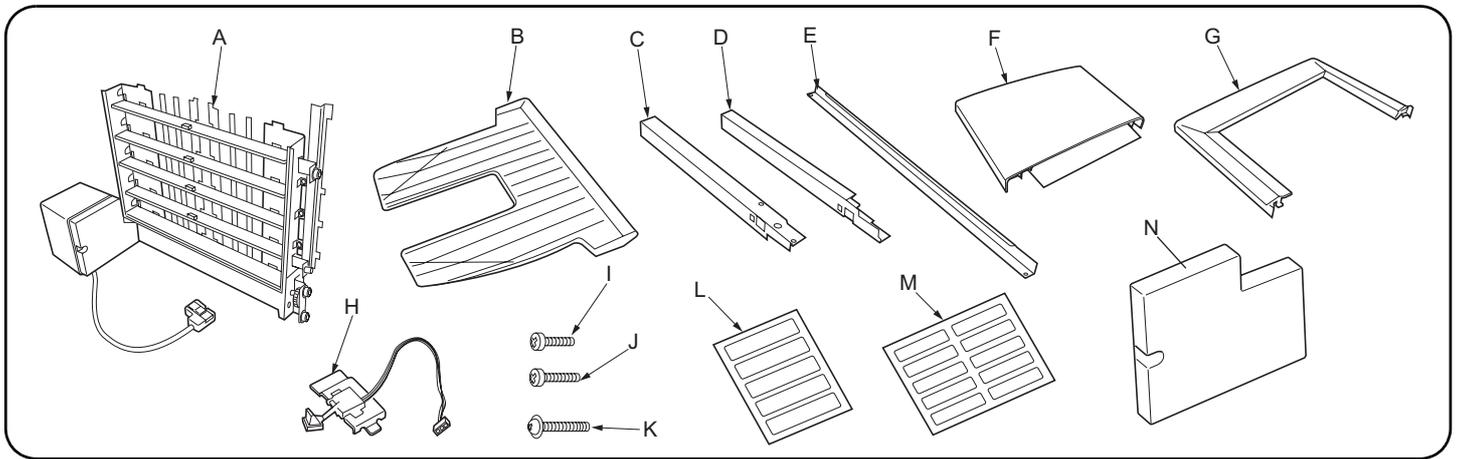
---

**日本語****注意**

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。  
設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

Model: DF-650(B)

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR MULTI JOB TRAY**



<b>English</b>		F Right cover..... 1	N Motor front cover..... 1
<b>Supplied parts</b>		G Left cover..... 1	
A Multi job tray..... 1	H Size detection switches..... 2	I M3 × 5 binding screws..... 2	
B Eject bins..... 5	J M4 × 6 binding screws..... 8	K M4 × 10 TP screws..... 7	
C Bin front guide plate..... 1	L Sheet of bin No. labels..... 1	M Sheet of name labels (for users)..... 1	
D Bin rear guide plate..... 1			
E Bin guide plate retainer..... 1			

**Precautions**

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

<b>Français</b>		F Couvercle droit..... 1	M Feuille d'étiquettes pour noms (pour les utilisateurs)..... 1
<b>Pièces fournies</b>		G Couvercle gauche..... 1	N Couvercle avant du moteur..... 1
A Plateau multitâches..... 1	H Boutons de détection de la dimension..... 2	I Vis de raccordement M3 × 5..... 2	
B Bacs d'éjection..... 5	J Vis de raccordement M4 × 6..... 8	K Vis M4 × 10 TP..... 7	
C Plaque du guide avant du bac..... 1	L Feuille d'étiquettes pour n° de bac..... 1		
D Plaque du guide arrière du bac..... 1			
E Arrêtoir de la plaque du guide du bac..... 1			

**Précautions**

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

<b>Español</b>		E Retenedor de la placa de la guía de la bandeja..... 1	L Hoja de etiquetas con Nos. de bandejas.... 1
<b>Partes suministradas</b>		F Tapa derecha..... 1	M Hoja de etiquetas de nombres (para usuarios)..... 1
A Bandeja multitrabajos..... 1	H Interruptor de detección de tamaños..... 2	G Tapa izquierda..... 1	N Tapa frontal de motor..... 1
B Bandejas de expulsión..... 5	I Tornillos de sujeción M3 × 5..... 2	H Interruptor de detección de tamaños..... 2	
C Placa de la guía frontal de la bandeja..... 1	J Tornillos de sujeción M4 × 6..... 8	I Tornillos de sujeción M3 × 5..... 2	
D Placa de la guía posterior de la bandeja..... 1	K Tornillos TP M4 × 10..... 7	J Tornillos de sujeción M4 × 6..... 8	

**Precauciones**

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

<b>Deutsch</b>		F Rechte Abdeckung..... 1	M Blatt mit Namensaufklebern (für Benutzer)..... 1
<b>Gelieferte Teile</b>		G Linke Abdeckung..... 1	N Vordere Motorabdeckung..... 1
A Multi-Job-Fach..... 1	H Größenkennungsschalteren..... 2	H Größenkennungsschalteren..... 2	
B Auswurfschachte..... 5	I M3 × 5 Verbundschrauben..... 2	I M3 × 5 Verbundschrauben..... 2	
C Vordere Führungsplatte des Schachts..... 1	J M4 × 6 Verbundschrauben..... 8	J M4 × 6 Verbundschrauben..... 8	
D Hintere Führungsplatte des Schachts..... 1	K M4 × 10 TP Schrauben..... 7	K M4 × 10 TP Schrauben..... 7	
E Führungsplattenhalter des Schachts..... 1	L Blatt mit Schachtnummer-Ausklebern..... 1	L Blatt mit Schachtnummer-Ausklebern..... 1	

**Vorsichtsmaßnahmen**

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

<b>Italiano</b>		E Fermo della piastra della guida del contenitore..... 1	L Foglio delle etichette con il numero del contenitore..... 1
<b>Parti fornite</b>		F Pannello destro..... 1	M Foglio delle etichette con il nome (per utenti)..... 1
A Vassoio multi-funzionale..... 1	H Interruttori rilevamento dimensione..... 2	G Pannello sinistro..... 1	N Pannello anteriore del motore..... 1
B Contenitori di espulsione..... 5	I Viti di serraggio M3 × 5..... 2	H Interruttori rilevamento dimensione..... 2	
C Piastra della guida anteriore del contenitore..... 1	J Viti di serraggio M4 × 6..... 8	I Viti di serraggio M3 × 5..... 2	
D Piastra della guida posteriore del contenitore..... 1	K Viti TP M4 × 10..... 7	J Viti di serraggio M4 × 6..... 8	

**Precauzioni**

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

<b>简体中文</b>		E 接纸盘导向板固定板..... 1	L 接纸盘号码标签..... 1
<b>附属品</b>		F 右盖板..... 1	M 名称标签(用户用)..... 1
A 多重托盘..... 1	H 尺寸检测开关..... 2	G 左盖板..... 1	N 马达前盖板..... 1
B 接纸盘..... 5	I M3 × 5 连接螺钉..... 2	H 尺寸检测开关..... 2	
C 接纸盘导向板前..... 1	J M4 × 6 连接螺钉..... 8	I M3 × 5 连接螺钉..... 2	
D 接纸盘导向板后..... 1	K M4 × 10 TP 螺钉..... 7	J M4 × 6 连接螺钉..... 8	

**注意事项**

如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

<b>日本語</b>		F 右カバー..... 1	M ネームラベル(ユーザー用)..... 1
<b>同梱品</b>		G 左カバー..... 1	N モーター前カバー..... 1
A マルチジョブトレイ..... 1	H サイズ検知スイッチ..... 2	H サイズ検知スイッチ..... 2	
B 排出ビン..... 5	I M3 × 5 バインドビス..... 2	I M3 × 5 バインドビス..... 2	
C ビン案内板前..... 1	J M4 × 6 バインドビス..... 8	J M4 × 6 バインドビス..... 8	
D ビン案内板後..... 1	K M4 × 10 TP ビス..... 7	K M4 × 10 TP ビス..... 7	
E ビン案内板固定板..... 1	L ビン No. ラベル..... 1	L ビン No. ラベル..... 1	

**注意事項**

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

**\* Unpacking Precautions**

Hold the frame at the front and back when removing the multi job tray from the box. Supporting the multi job tray from the bottom may cause deformation of the film adhered to it.

**Procedure**

Before installing the multi job tray, turn the copier off from the main switch and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet. Install the multi job tray after attaching the finisher main tray.

**\* Notes before installing the multi job tray**

When installing the multi job tray and centerfold unit as a set, first install the centerfold unit and then the multi job tray.

**\* Installation should be carried out with the finisher's rear panel removed.**

**\* Précautions de déballage**

Maintenir le cadre à l'avant et à l'arrière lors du retrait du plateau multitâches de la boîte. Porter le plateau multitâches par le fond peut endommager le film qui le recouvre.

**Procédure**

Avant d'installer le plateau multitâches, mettre le copieur hors tension en appuyant sur l'interrupteur principal et débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise murale. Installer le plateau multitâches après avoir fixé le plateau principal du retoucheur.

**\* Remarques avant d'installer le plateau multitâches**

Lorsque vous installez l'ensemble plateau multitâches et unité pour pages centrales dépliantes, installez d'abord l'unité, puis le plateau.

**\* Avant l'installation, vous devez avoir retiré le panneau arrière du retoucheur.**

**\* Precauciones al desempaquetar**

Al sacar la bandeja multitrabajos de la caja, sujete el marco por delante y por detrás. Sostener la bandeja multitrabajos por abajo puede causar deformaciones en la película que hay adherida a la misma.

**Procedimiento**

Antes de instalar la bandeja multitrabajos, apague el interruptor principal de la copiadora y desconecte el cable de alimentación del receptáculo de pared. Instale la bandeja multitrabajos luego de haber anexado la bandeja principal del finalizador.

**\* Notas antes de instalar la bandeja multitrabajos**

Cuando instale la bandeja multitrabajos y la unidad de plegado central como un juego, instale en primer lugar la unidad de plegado central y después la bandeja multitrabajos.

**\* La instalación debe realizarse con el panel posterior del finalizador extraído.**

**\* Vorsichtsmaßnahmen beim**

Auspacken Halten Sie, wenn Sie das Multi-Job-Fach aus dem Karton herausnehmen, den Rahmen vorne und hinten fest. Wenn Sie das Multi-Job-Fach von unten abstützen, kann die aufgeklebte Folie verformt werden.

**Vorgang**

Schalten Sie vor der Installation des Multi-Job-Fachs den Kopierer am Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose. Installieren Sie das Multi-Job-Fach nach der Anbringung des Hauptfach des Finishers.

**\* Hinweise zur Installation des Multi-Job-Fachs**

Wenn das Multi-Job-Fach und die Mittelfalteinheit zusammen installiert werden, installieren Sie zunächst die Mittelfalteinheit und dann das Multi-Job-Fach.

**\* Vor der Installation sollte die Finisherrückwand entfernt werden.**

**\* Precauzioni per il disimballaggio**

Tenere ferme le parti anteriore e posteriore della struttura quando si rimuove il vassoio multi-funzionale dal contenitore. Sorreggere il vassoio multi-funzionale dal fondo può causare una deformazione della pellicola ad esso aderente.

**Procedura**

Prima di installare il vassoio multi-funzionale, spegnere la fotocopiatrice utilizzando l'interruttore principale e disinserire il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro. Installare il vassoio multi-funzionale dopo aver fissato il vassoio principale della finitrice.

**\* Note prima di installare il vassoio multi-funzionale**

Nell'installare come set il vassoio multi-funzionale e l'unità centro-piega, installare dapprima l'unità centro-piega, quindi il vassoio multi-funzionale.

**\* L'installazione deve essere eseguita con il pannello posteriore del finisher rimosso.**

**※ 開箱注意事項**

当將多重托盤從盒內取出時，請從前後抓住框架。若從底部托住多重托盤可能會導致粘貼在上面的薄膜變形。

**[ 安裝次序 ]**

安裝多重托盤時，務必关掉復印機主機的主電源，拔掉復印機主機的電源插頭後，再進行作業。另外，務必在安裝好裝訂器的主托盤後再安裝多重托盤。

**※ 安裝多重托盤前的注意事項**

當將多重托盤和折疊裝置配套安裝時，請先安裝折疊裝置，然後安裝多重托盤。

※ 應將裝訂器的後側面板卸下後再進行安裝。

**\* 開梱時の注意**

マルチジョブトレイを取り出すときは、フレーム前後を持つこと。底部分を持つと貼り付けられたフィルムが変形する可能性があります。

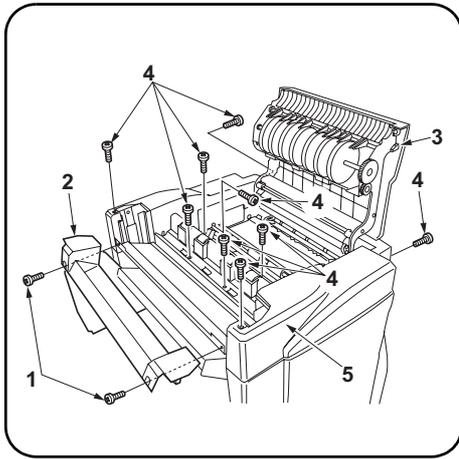
**[ 取付手順 ]**

マルチジョブトレイを設置するときは、必ず複写機本体のメインスイッチをOFFにし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。また、フィニッシャのメイントレイを取り付けてからマルチジョブトレイを設置すること。

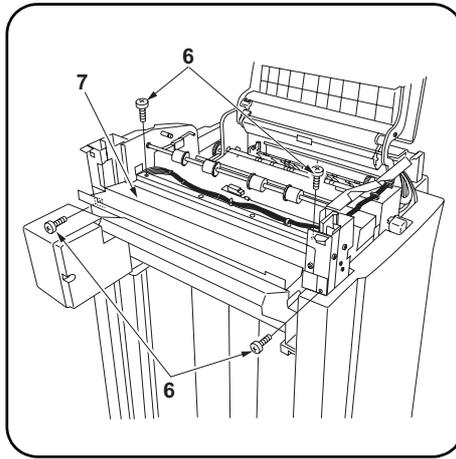
**\* マルチジョブトレイ設置前の注意事項**

中折りユニットとセットで設置する場合は、先に中折りユニット設置後、マルチジョブトレイを設置してください。

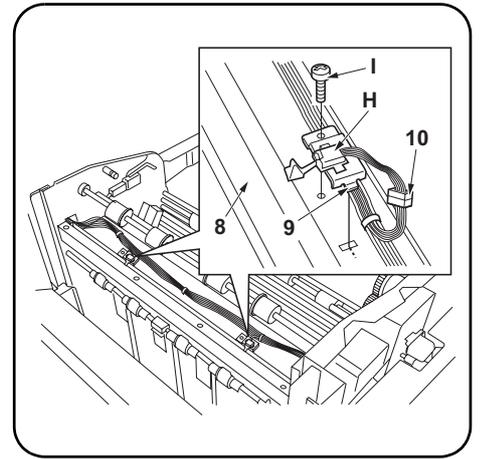
\* フィニッシャの後カバーを外した状態で作業してください。



1. Remove the two screws (1) locking down the top cover lid (2) followed by the lid.
2. Open the upper cover (3) and remove the nine screws (4) locking down the top cover (5) followed by the top cover.



3. Remove the four screws (6) locking down the top cover lid guide (7) followed by the guide.



4. Attach the two size detection switches (H) to the eject stay (8) by inserting the tabs (9), and lock in place with one M3 x 5 binding screw (I) each.
5. Connect the 3-pin connector (10) of the size detection switch (H) to the connector of the finisher.

1. Retirer les deux vis (1) bloquant le capuchon du couvercle du haut (2), puis le capuchon.
2. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur (3) et retirer les neufs vis (4) bloquant le couvercle du haut (5), puis le couvercle du haut.

3. Retirer les quatre vis (6) bloquant le guide du capuchon du couvercle du haut (7), puis le guide.

4. Fixer les deux boutons de détection de la dimension (H) sur le hauban d'éjection (8) en insérant les taquets (9), puis bloquer chacun d'eux à l'aide d'une vis de raccordement M3 x 5 (I).
5. Connecter le connecteur à 3 broches (10) du bouton de détection de la dimension (H) au connecteur du retoucheur.

1. Quite los dos tornillos (1) que aseguran la tapa de la cubierta tope (2) y a continuación la tapa.
2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) y quite los nueve tornillos (4) que aseguran la cubierta tope (5) y a continuación la cubierta tope.

3. Quite los cuatro tornillos (6) que aseguran la guía de la tapa de la cubierta tope (7) y a continuación la guía.

4. Anexe los dos interruptores de detección de tamaño (H) a la base de expulsión (8) insertando los tabuladores (9), y asegúrelos en su lugar usando un tornillo de sujeción M3 x 5 (I) para cada uno.
5. Conecte el conector de 3 pernos (10) del interruptor de detección de tamaño (H) al conector del finalizador.

1. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (1), die den Deckel der höheren Abdeckung (2) befestigt und dann den Deckel.
2. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (3) und entfernen Sie die neun Schrauben (4), die die höhere Abdeckung (5) befestigen und dann die höhere Abdeckung.

3. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (6), die die Deckelführung (7) der höheren Abdeckung befestigt und dann die Führung.

4. Bringen Sie die zwei Größenkennungsschalter (H) an die Auswurfstütze (8) an, indem Sie die Nasen (9) einführen, und befestigen Sie ihn mit jeweils einer M3 x 5 Verbundschraube (I).
5. Schliessen Sie den 3poligen Steckverbinder (10) des Größenkennungsschalter (H) am Steckverbinder des Finishers an.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (1) di fissaggio del coperchio della copertura superiore (2), quindi il coperchio stesso.
2. Sollevare il pannello superiore (3) e rimuovere le nove viti (4) di bloccaggio della copertura superiore (5), quindi la copertura stessa.

3. Rimuovere le quattro viti (6) di fissaggio della guida del coperchio della copertura superiore (7), quindi la guida stessa.

4. Fissare i due interruttori di rilevamento dimensione (H) alla sospensione dell'espulsione (8) inserendo le linguette (9) e fissandole in posizione, utilizzando per ciascuna di esse una vite di serraggio M3 x 5 (I).
5. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (10) dell'interruttore di rilevamento dimensione (H), al connettore della finitrice.

1. 取下 2 顆螺釘 (1)。卸下頂部蓋板蓋 (2)。
2. 打開上蓋板 (3)，取下 9 顆螺釘 (4)，卸下頂部蓋板 (5)。

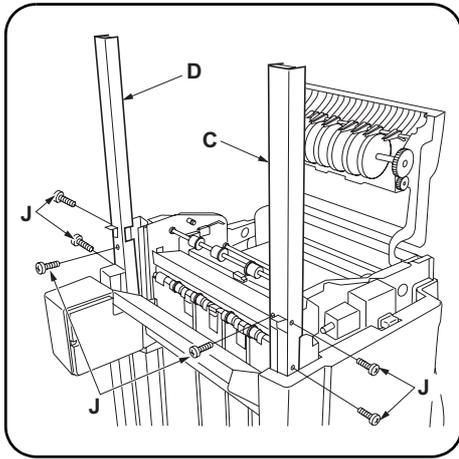
3. 取下 4 顆螺釘 (6)，卸下頂部蓋板蓋的導向板 (7)。

4. 將 2 個尺寸檢測開關 (H) 的卡爪 (9) 插入排紙支板 (8) 安裝，各用 1 顆 M3 × 5 連接螺釘 (I) 固定。
5. 連接尺寸檢測開關 (H) 的 3P 接頭 (10)。

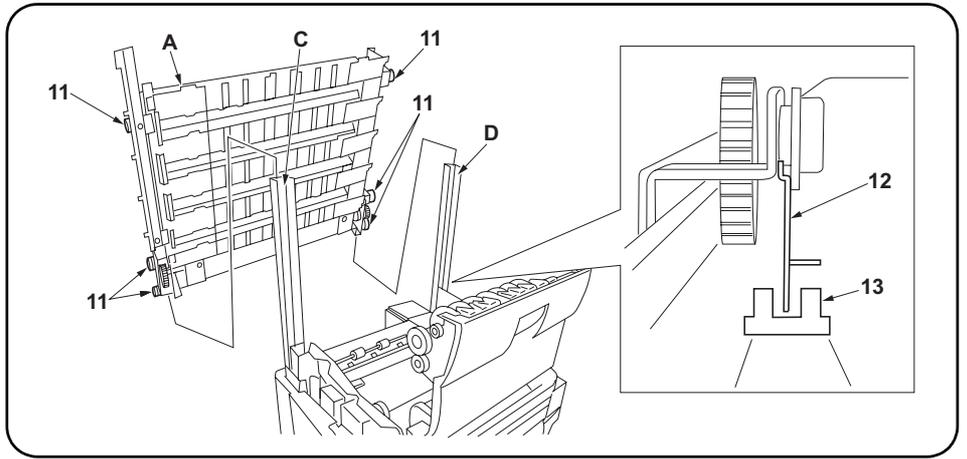
1. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、天カバーフタ (2) を取り外す。
2. 上カバー (3) を開き、ビス (4) 9 本を外して天カバー (5) を取り外す。

3. ビス (6) 4 本を外し、天カバーフタガイド板 (7) を取り外す。

4. サイズ検知スイッチ (H) 2 個を排出ステー (8) にツメ (9) を挿入して取り付け、M3 × 5 バインドビス (I) 各 1 本で固定する。
5. サイズ検知スイッチ (H) の 3P コネクタ (10) を接続する。



6. Attach the bin front guide plate (C) and bin rear guide plate (D) to the finisher by inserting the claws on plates into the finisher frame and lock in place with three M4 x 6 binding screws (J) each.



7. Attach the multi job tray (A) to the bin front guide plate (C) and bin rear guide plate (D) by inserting the six pulleys (11) at the tray front and rear into the plates.

**Note:** Make sure that the shading plate (12) at the rear of the multi job tray (A) does not make contact with the sensor (13).

6. Fixer la plaque du guide avant du bac (C) et la plaque du guide arrière du bac (D) au retoucheur en insérant les pinces des plaques dans le cadre du retoucheur et en les bloquant avec trois vis de raccordement M4 x 6 (J) chacune.

7. Fixer le plateau multitâches (A) à la plaque du guide avant du bac (C) et à la plaque du guide arrière du bac (D) en insérant les six poulies (11) se trouvant à l'avant et à l'arrière du plateau dans les plaques.

**Remarque:** S'assurer que la plaque protectrice (12) se trouvant à l'arrière du plateau multitâches (A) n'entre pas en contact avec le capteur (13).

6. Anexe la placa de la guía frontal de la bandeja (C) y la placa de la guía posterior de la bandeja (D) al finalizador al insertar los ganchos de las placas en el marco del finalizador, y asegúrelas en su lugar usando tres tornillos de sujeción M4 x 6 (J), para cada una.

7. Anexe la bandeja multitrabajos (A) a la placa de la guía frontal de la bandeja (C) y a la placa de la guía posterior de la bandeja (D) insertando las seis poleas (11) del frente y de la parte posterior de la bandeja en las placas.

**Nota:** Asegúrese que la placa de sombreado (12) de la parte posterior de la bandeja multitrabajos (A) no haga contacto con el sensor (13).

6. Bringen Sie die vordere Führungsplatte des Schachts (C) und hintere Führungsplatte des Schachts (D) am Finisher an, indem Sie die Klauen auf den Platten im Finisherrahmen einsetzen und mit jeweils drei M4 x 6 Verbundschrauben (J) befestigen.

7. Bringen Sie das Multi-Job-Fach (A) an die vordere Führungsplatte des Schachts (C) und hintere Führungsplatte des Schachts (D) an, indem Sie die sechs Rollen (11) an der Vorderseite und Rückseite des Fachs in die Platten einführen.

**Hinweis:** Stellen Sie sicher, daß die Schattenplatte (12) auf der Rückseite des Multi-Job-Fachs (A) nicht mit dem Sensor (13) in Kontakt kommt.

6. Fissare la piastra della guida anteriore del contenitore (C) e la piastra della guida posteriore del contenitore (D) alla finitrice, inserendo le griffe posizionate sulle piastre nella struttura della finitrice e bloccarle in posizione servendosi di tre viti di serraggio M4 x 6 (J) per ciascuna di esse.

7. Fissare il vassoio multi-funzionale (A) alla piastra della guida anteriore del contenitore (C) e alla piastra della guida posteriore del contenitore (D), inserendo nelle piastre le sei pulegge (11) che si trovano sulla parte anteriore e posteriore del vassoio.

**Nota:** Accertarsi che la piastra di protezione (12) che si trova sulla parte posteriore del vassoio multi-funzionale (A) non venga a contatto con il sensore (13).

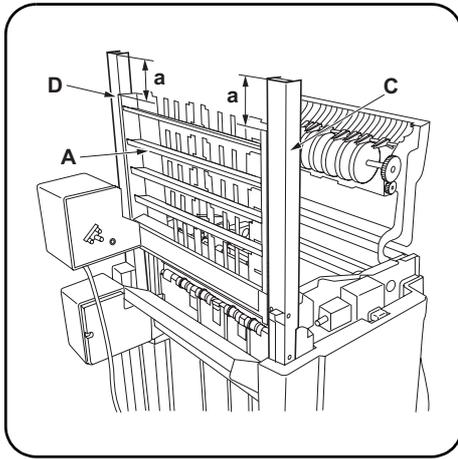
6. 将接纸盘导向板前(C)及接纸盘导向板后(D)的卡爪插入装订器的框架中,并将其安装到装订器上,各用3颗M4×6连接螺钉(J)固定。

7. 将6颗前后滚轮(11)插入接纸盘导向板前(C)及接纸盘导向板后(D)安装多重托盘(A)。※ 请注意不要使多重托盘(A)后侧的遮光板(12)接触传感器(13)。

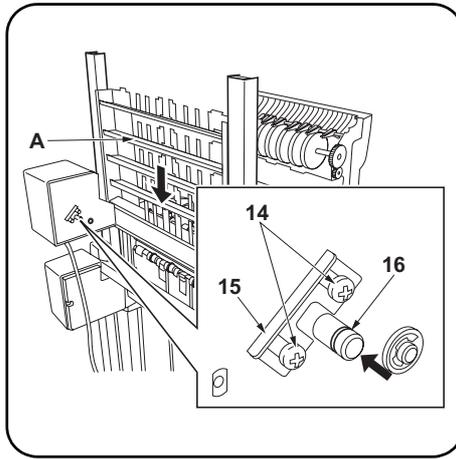
6. ビン案内板前 (C) およびビン案内板後 (D) のツメをフィニッシャのフレームに挿入してフィニッシャに取り付け、M4×6 バインドビス (J) 各3本で固定する。

7. マルチジョブトレイ (A) をビン案内板前 (C) およびビン案内板後 (D) に前後のコロ (11) 6個を挿入して取り付ける。

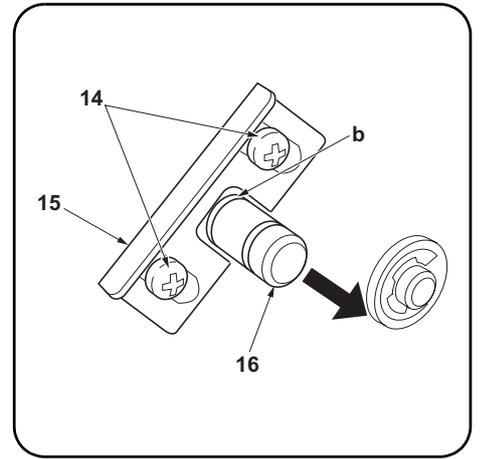
\* マルチジョブトレイ (A) 後側の遮光板 (12) がセンサ (13) に接触しないように注意すること。



8. Measure the height "a" against the scale to make sure that the multi job tray (A) is positioned properly to stay level from front to rear.  
If the height "a" is not the same at the front and rear, the multi job tray (A) may not be positioned on a level plane. Install the tray again.



9. Loosen the two screws (14).  
10. With the retainer (15) slid upward, push in the gear shaft (16) while holding the bottom of the multi job tray (A). Then, lower the multi job tray (A) by about 30 mm.



11. Pull out the gear shaft (16), slide the retainer (15) to its original position and retighten the two screws (14).  
**Note:** Make sure the gear shaft (16) is positioned so that the retainer (15) will be engaged in groove "b" on the shaft.

8. Mesurer la hauteur "a" contre l'échelle pour s'assurer que le plateau multitâches (A) est en position correcte et restera nivelé sur toute sa longueur.  
Si la hauteur "a" à l'avant et à l'arrière n'est pas identique, le plateau multitâches (A) ne se trouvera pas sur un plan horizontal. Réinstaller le plateau.

9. Relâcher les deux vis (14).  
10. Avec l'arrêt (15) vers le haut, enfoncez l'arbre de transmission (16) tout en tenant la base du plateau multitâches (A). Ensuite, abaissez le plateau multitâches (A) d'environ 30 mm.

11. Tirer sur l'arbre de transmission (16), faire coulisser l'arrêt (15) vers sa position initiale puis resserrer les deux vis (14).  
**Remarque:** S'assurer que la position de l'arbre de transmission (16) permette à l'arrêt (15) de s'engager dans la fente "b" de l'arbre.

8. Mida la altura "a" usando la escala para asegurarse de que la bandeja multitrabajos (A) se encuentra posicionada adecuadamente de modo que permanece nivelada desde el frente hasta la parte posterior.  
Si la altura "a" no es la misma en la parte frontal y posterior, la bandeja multitrabajos (A) podría no estar posicionada en un plano nivelado. Instale la bandeja de nuevo.

9. Afloje los dos tornillos (14).  
10. Con el retenedor (15) deslizado hacia arriba, empuje el eje (16) mientras sujeta la parte inferior de la bandeja multitrabajos (A). Luego, baje la bandeja multitrabajos (A) unos 30 mm.

11. Hale el eje (16), deslice el retenedor (15) hasta colocarlo en su posición original y vuelva a apretar los dos tornillos (14).  
**Nota:** Asegúrese de que el eje (16) se encuentre posicionado de modo que el retenedor (15) pueda ser enganchado en la hendidura "b" del eje.

8. Messen Sie die Höhe "a" an der Skalierung, um sicherzustellen, daß das Multi-Job-Fach (A) korrekt positioniert ist und eben steht vorn und hinten.  
Falls die Höhe "a" nicht die gleiche ist vorn und hinten, ist das Multi-Job-Fach (A) vielleicht nicht auf einer ebenen Fläche installiert. Installieren Sie das Fach erneut.

9. Lösen Sie die zwei Schrauben (14).  
10. Mit dem Halter (15) nach oben geschoben, schieben Sie den Getriebeschaft (16), während Sie den Boden des Multi-Job-Fachs (A) halten. Senken Sie dann das Multi-Job-Fach (A) um etwa 30 mm.

11. Ziehen Sie den Getriebeschaft (16) heraus, schieben Sie den Halter (15) in seine originale Position, und ziehen Sie die zwei Schrauben (14) wieder fest.  
**Hinweis:** Stellen Sie sicher, daß der Getriebeschaft (16) so positioniert ist, daß der Halter (15) in Rille "b" auf dem Schaft einrastet.

8. Misurare l'altezza "a" rispetto alla scala, per accertarsi che il vassoio multi-funzionale (A) sia posizionato correttamente e che sia perfettamente parallelo al piano.  
Se esistono discrepanze di altezza "a" tra la parte posteriore e quella anteriore, non è possibile posizionare su un piano orizzontale il vassoio multi-funzionale (A). Installare nuovamente il vassoio.

9. Allentare le due viti (14).  
10. Con il cursore del fermo (15) fatto scivolare verso l'alto, spingere all'interno l'albero dell'ingranaggio (16), mantenendo il fondo del vassoio multi-funzionale (A). Abbassare quindi il vassoio (A) di circa 30 mm.

11. Estrarre l'albero dell'ingranaggio (16), riportare il fermo (15) alla posizione originaria e stringere nuovamente le due viti (14).  
**Nota:** Accertarsi che l'albero dell'ingranaggio (16) sia posizionato in modo che il fermo (15) si trovi nella scanalatura "b" sull'albero.

8. 用刻度尺确认多重托盘(A)的高度a在机器前后是否等同。  
在机器前后的高度a不同时,多重托盘(A)很可能安装得歪斜了,因此需重新安装。

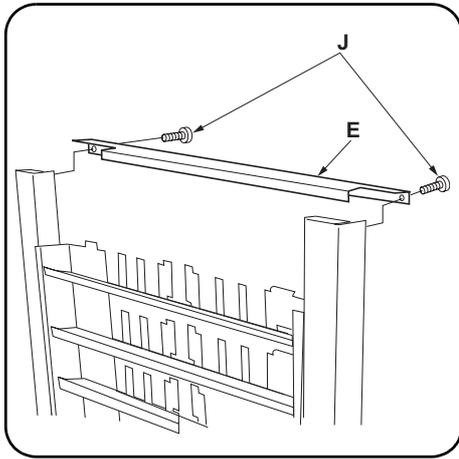
9. 松动2颗螺钉(14)。  
10. 在向上侧滑动固定板(15)的情况下,边支撑多重托盘(A)的下部,边压下齿轮轴(16),降下多重托盘(A)约30mm。

11. 拉出齿轮轴(16),将固定板(15)放回原处,拧紧2颗螺钉(14)。  
※固定板(15)应在嵌入齿轮轴(16)的槽b的位置上。

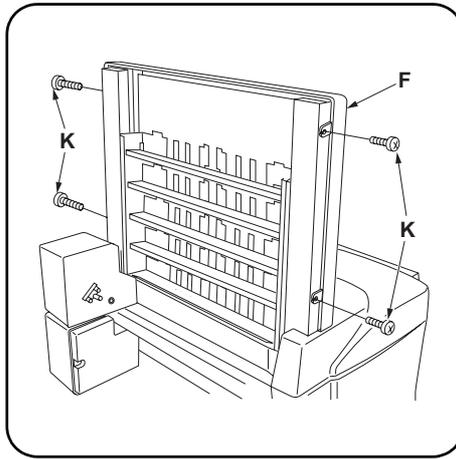
8. マルチジョブトレイ (A) の高さ a が、機械前後で等しくなっているかスケールを用いて確認する。  
高さ a が機械前後で異なる場合は、マルチジョブトレイ (A) が斜めにセットされている恐れがあるので再セットし直す。

9. ビス (14) 2本を緩める。  
10. 固定板 (15) を上側へスライドした状態で、マルチジョブトレイ (A) の下部を支えながらギヤー軸 (16) を押し込み、マルチジョブトレイ (A) を約30mm下げる。

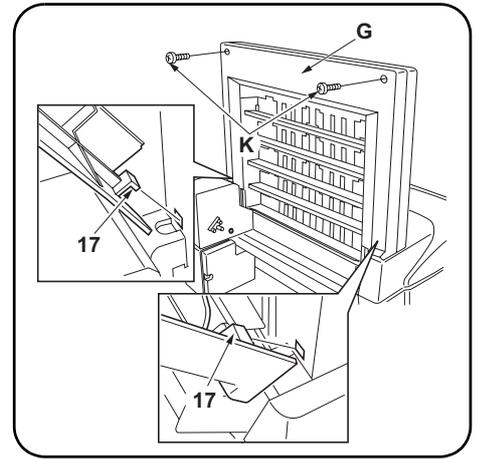
11. ギヤー軸 (16) を引き出し、固定板 (15) を元に戻してビス (14) 2本を締め付ける。  
\* ギヤー軸 (16) の溝 b に固定板 (15) がはまる位置にあること。



- 12.** Attach the bin guide plate retainer (E) with two M4 x 6 binding screws (J).
- 13.** Reattach the top cover (5) with the nine screws (4) removed in step 2, keeping the upper cover (3) open halfway to enable proper attaching.



- 14.** Attach the right cover (F) with four M4 x 10 TP screws (K).



- 15.** Attach the left cover (G) by inserting the two pegs (17) into the square holes, and lock in place with two M4 x 10 TP screws (K).

- 12.** Fixer l'arrêtoir de la plaque du guide du bac (E) à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 6 (J).
- 13.** Refixer le couvercle du haut (5) à l'aide des neuf vis (4) retirées à l'étape 2, tout en maintenant le couvercle supérieur (3) à moitié ouvert afin de permettre une bonne fixation.

- 14.** Fixer le couvercle droit (F) avec quatre vis M4 x 10 TP (K).

- 15.** Fixer le couvercle gauche (G) en insérant les deux points d'appui (17) dans les orifices carrés, et les bloquer en place à l'aide de deux vis M4 x 10 TP (K).

- 12.** Anexe el retenedor de la placa de la guía de la bandeja (E) usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 6 (J).
- 13.** Vuelva a anexas la cubierta tope (5) usando los nueve tornillos (4) que quitó en el paso 2, manteniendo la cubierta superior (3) abierta a medias a fin de facilitar la instalación correcta.

- 14.** Anexe la tapa derecha (F) usando cuatro tornillos TP M4 x 10 (K).

- 15.** Anexe la tapa izquierda (G) al insertar las dos clavijas (17) en los huecos cuadrados, y asegure en su lugar usando dos tornillos TP M4 x 10 (K).

- 12.** Bringen Sie den Führungsplattenhalter (E) des Schachts mit zwei M4 x 6 J Verbundschrauben (J) an.
- 13.** Bringen Sie die höhere Abdeckung (5) mittels der neun in Schritt 2 entfernten Schrauben (4) wieder an, und halten Sie dabei die obere Abdeckung (3) zum leichteren Anbringen halbswegs offen.

- 14.** Bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung (F) mit vier M4 x 10 TP Schrauben (K) an.

- 15.** Bringen Sie die linke Abdeckung (G) an, indem Sie die zwei Klammern (17) in die quadratischen Löcher einsetzen, und befestigen Sie sie mit zwei M4 x 10 TP Schrauben (K).

- 12.** Fissare il fermo della piastra della guida del contenitore (E) con due viti di serraggio M4 x 6 (J)
- 13.** Fissare nuovamente la copertura superiore (5) con le nove viti (4) rimosse al punto 2, mantenendo il pannello superiore (3) aperto per metà, in modo da consentire un fissaggio adeguato.

- 14.** Fissare il pannello destro (F) con quattro viti TP M4 x 10 (K).

- 15.** Fissare il pannello sinistro (G) inserendo i due picchetti (17) nei fori quadrati e bloccarlo in posizione, servendosi di due viti TP M4 x 10 (K).

- 12.** 用2顆M4×6連接螺釘(J)安裝接紙盤導向板固定板(E)。
- 13.** 邊傾斜地打開上蓋板(3)，邊用9顆在步驟2中取下的螺釘(4)按原樣安裝頂部蓋板(5)。

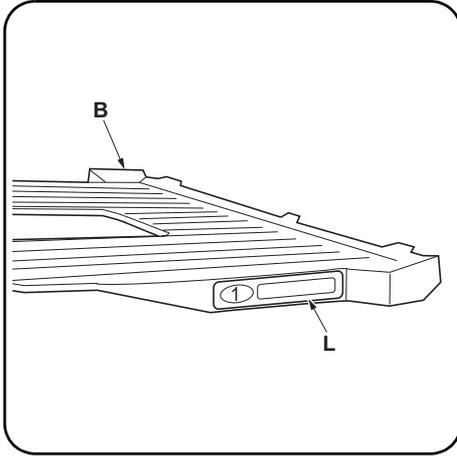
- 14.** 用4顆M4×10TP螺釘(K)安裝右蓋板(F)。

- 15.** 將2處左蓋板(G)的卡爪(17)插入角孔安裝，用2顆M4×10TP螺釘(K)固定。

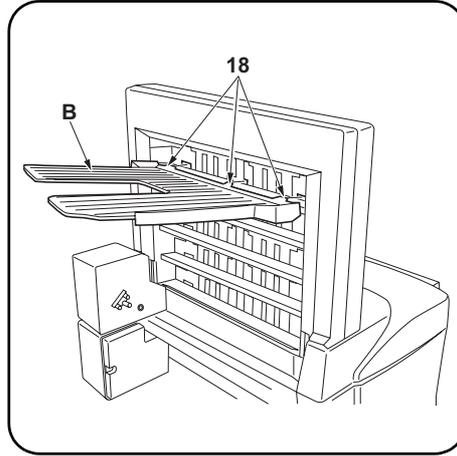
- 12.** ビン案内板固定板(E)をM4×6バインドビス(J)2本で取り付けける。
- 13.** 上カバー(3)を斜めに開きながら天カバー(5)を手順2で外したビス(4)9本で元通りに取り付けける。

- 14.** 右カバー(F)をM4×10TPビス(K)4本で取り付けける。

- 15.** 左カバー(G)のツメ(17)2カ所を角穴に挿入して取り付け、M4×10TPビス(K)2本で固定する。



**16.** Affix a bin No. label (L) to each of the five eject bins (B).



**17.** Attach the eject bin (B) with the label (L) No.1 affixed at the uppermost shelf of the multi job tray (A) by inserting the three claws (18) into the square holes.

**16.** Apposer une étiquette pour n° de bac (L) sur chacun des cinq bacs d'éjection (B).

**17.** Fixer le bac d'éjection (B) avec l'étiquette (L) n° 1 apposée à l'étage le plus élevé du plateau multitâches (A) en insérant les trois pinces (18) dans les orifices carrés.

**16.** Pegue una etiqueta con No. de bandeja (L) a cada una de las cinco bandejas de expulsión (B).

**17.** Anexe la bandeja de expulsión (B) con la etiqueta (L) No. 1 pegada en la repisa de más arriba de la bandeja multitrabajos (A) al insertar los tres ganchos (18) en los huecos cuadrados.

**16.** Bringen Sie einen Schachtnummern-Aufkleber (L) auf jede der fünf Auswurfschächte (B) an.

**17.** Bringen Sie den Auswurfschacht (B) mit dem Aufkleber (L) Nr.1 an der obersten Ablage des Multi-Job-Fachs (A) an, indem Sie die drei Klauen (18) in die quadratischen Löcher einsetzen.

**16.** Posizionare un'etichetta con il numero del contenitore (L) a ciascuno dei cinque contenitori di espulsione (B).

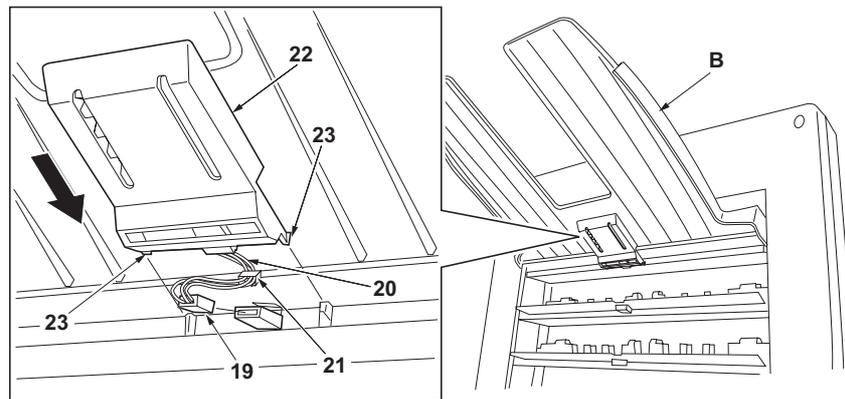
**17.** Fissare il contenitore di espulsione (B) con l'etichetta (L) N. 1 alla mensola del vassoio multi-funzionale (A) posizionata più in alto, inserendo le tre griffe (18) nei fori quadrati.

**16.** 将接纸盘号码标签(L)贴在5个接纸盘(B)上。

**17.** 将贴有No.1的接纸盘号码标签(L)的接纸盘(B)的3处卡爪(18)插入角孔, 安装到多重托盘(A)的最上层。

**16.** ビン No. ラベル (L) を排出ビン (B) 5 個に貼り付ける。

**17.** No. 1 のビン No. ラベル (L) が貼り付けられている排出ビン (B) をマルチジョブトレイ (A) の最上段に、ツメ (18) 3 カ所を角穴にはめ込んで取り付ける。



18. Connect the 3-pin connector (19) at the back side of the eject bin (B).
19. Fit the cable (20) of the 3-pin connector (19) to the inside of the eject bin (B) and lock down with the cable retainer (21).
20. Slide the eject bin lid (22) into position and lock in place by inserting the two pegs (23) into the square holes.  
**Note:** Make sure that the cable (20) is tidily fitted and not caught in the eject bin lid (22).
21. Repeat steps 17 to 20 to attach the other four eject bins (B).  
**Note:** Attach the eject bins (B) in the order of the bin No. labels (L) so that the bin with the label No.1 is at the uppermost shelf, No.2 at the second and so forth.

18. Connecter le connecteur à 3 broches (19) à l'arrière du bac d'éjection (B).
19. Introduire le câble (20) du connecteur à 3 broches (19) dans le bac d'éjection (B) et le bloquer à l'aide de l'arrêtoir du câble (21).
20. Faire coulisser le couvercle du bac d'éjection (22) et le fixer en place en insérant les deux points d'appui (23) dans les orifices carrés.  
**Remarque:** S'assurer que le câble (20) est mis en place correctement et n'est pas coincé avec le couvercle du bac d'éjection (22).
21. Répéter les étapes 17 à 20 pour fixer les quatre autres bacs d'éjection (B).  
**Remarque:** Fixer les bacs d'éjection (B) en suivant l'ordre des étiquettes pour n° de bac (L) de telle façon que l'étiquette n° 1 se trouve à l'étage le plus élevé, l'étiquette n° 2 au second étage et ainsi de suite.

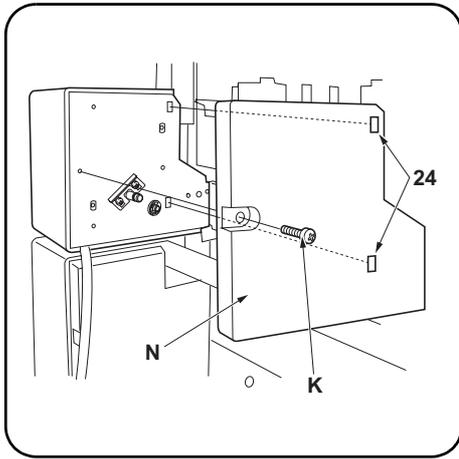
18. Conecte el conector de 3 pernos (19) en el lado posterior de la bandeja de expulsión (B).
19. Encaje el cable (20) del conector de 3 pernos (19) en el lado interior de la bandeja de expulsión (B) y asegúrelo usando el retenedor de cable (21).
20. Deslice la tapa de la bandeja de expulsión (22) hasta que quede en posición y asegúrela en su lugar insertando dos clavijas (23) en los huecos cuadrados.  
**Nota:** Asegúrese de que el cable (20) se encuentre cuidadosamente colocado y que no se encuentre atrapado en la tapa de la bandeja de expulsión (22).
21. Repita los pasos del 17 al 20 para anexar las otras cuatro bandejas de expulsión (B).  
**Nota:** Anexe las bandejas de expulsión (B) en el orden de las etiquetas de No. de bandeja (L) de modo que la bandeja con la etiqueta No. 1 sea la de la repisa de más arriba, la No. 2 la segunda, y así sucesivamente.

18. Schliessen Sie den 3poligen Steckverbinder (19) auf der Rückseite des Auswurfschachts (B) an.
19. Legen Sie das Kabel (20) des 3poligen Steckverbinders (19) in das Innere des Auswurfschachts (B), und befestigen Sie es mit dem Kabelhalter (21).
20. Schieben Sie den Auswurfschachtdeckel (22) in Position, und befestigen Sie ihn durch Einsetzen der zwei Klammern (23) in die quadratischen Löcher.  
**Hinweis:** Stellen Sie sicher, daß das Kabel (20) sauber verlegt ist und nicht im Auswurfschachtdeckel (22) geklemmt werden kann.
21. Wiederholen Sie Schritte 17 bis 20, wenn Sie die verbleibenden vier Auswurfschächte (B) anbringen.  
**Hinweis:** Bringen Sie die Auswurfschächte (B) in der Reihenfolge der Schachtnummern-Aufkleber (L) so an, daß der Schacht mit Aufkleber Nr. 1 an der obersten Ablage und Nr.2 an der darunter u.s.w. angebracht ist.

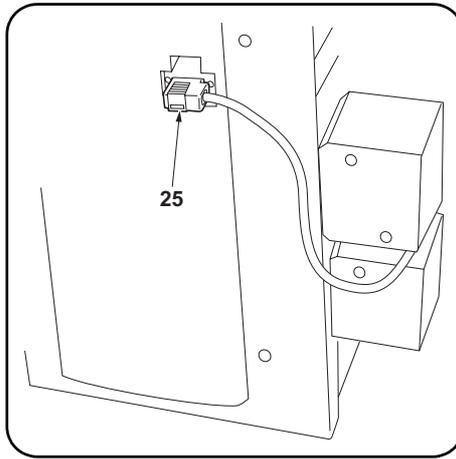
18. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (19) al lato posteriore del contenitore di espulsione (B).
19. Inserire il cavo (20) del connettore a 3 piedini (19) all'interno del contenitore di espulsione (B) e bloccarlo col fermo del cavo (21).
20. Far scivolare in posizione il coperchio del contenitore di espulsione (22) e bloccarlo inserendo i due picchetti (23) nei fori quadrati.  
**Nota:** Accertarsi che il cavo (20) sia bene inserito e che non sia bloccato dal coperchio del contenitore di espulsione (22).
21. Ripetere i passi da 17 a 20 per fissare gli altri quattro contenitori di espulsione (B).  
**Nota:** Fissare i contenitori di espulsione (B) nell'ordine indicato dalle etichette con il numero del contenitore (L), in modo che il contenitore con l'etichetta N. 1 si trovi sulla mensola posizionata più in alto, che quello con l'etichetta N. 2 si trovi sulla seconda e così via.

18. 连接接纸盘(B)下侧的3P接头(19)。
19. 将3P接头(19)的电线(20)插入接纸盘(B)的内部,用压线板(21)固定。
20. 滑动接纸盘盖(22),将2处卡爪(23)嵌入角孔固定。  
※此时,务必确认从接纸盘盖(22)中有没有露出电线(20)及接纸盘盖(22)有没有压住电线(20)。
21. 同样重复步骤17~20,安装剩下的4个接纸盘(B)。  
※按接纸盘号码标签(L)的号码即从上往下1、2、3…的次序,安装各个接纸盘(B)。

18. 排出ビン(B)下側の3Pコネクタ(19)を接続する。
19. 3Pコネクタ(19)の電線(20)を排出ビン(B)の内部に押し込んで、線押さえ(21)で留める。
20. 排出ビンフタ(22)をスライドし、ツメ(23)2カ所を角穴にはめ込んで固定する。  
\* 排出ビンフタ(22)から電線(20)がはみ出したり、はさみ込まれていないか確認すること。
21. 同様に手順17~20を行い、残り4個の排出ビン(B)を取り付ける。  
\* ビンNo.ラベル(L)のNo.が上から1、2、3…の順番で、各排出ビン(B)を取り付けること。



**22.** Insert the two lugs (24) of the motor front cover (N) into the rectangular holes, and secure them with the M4 x 10 TP screw (K).



**23.** Connect the signal cable (25) of the multi job tray (A) to the finisher connector.

**24.** Plug the copier's power cable into a wall outlet and turn the copier on from the main switch.

**25.** Make a test copy and check the multi job tray (A) performs properly.

**22.** Insérez les deux taquets (24) du couvercle avant du moteur (N) dans les orifices rectangulaires et fixez-les à l'aide de la vis M4 x 10 TP (K).

**23.** Connecter le câble d'interface (25) du plateau multitâches (A) au connecteur du retoucheur.

**24.** Connecter le câble d'alimentation du copieur à une prise murale et mettre le copieur sous tension en appuyant sur l'interrupteur principal.

**25.** Faire une copie de test et vérifier le bon fonctionnement du plateau multitâches (A).

**22.** Introduzca los dos salientes (24) de la tapa frontal del motor (N) en los orificios rectangulares y fíjelos con el tornillo TP M4 x 10 (K).

**23.** Conecte el cable de señal (25) de la bandeja multitrabajos (A) al conector del finalizador.

**24.** Conecte el cable de alimentación de la copiadora en un receptáculo de pared y encienda la copiadora usando el interruptor principal.

**25.** Haga una copia de prueba y compruebe que la bandeja multitrabajos (A) funciona adecuadamente.

**22.** Schieben Sie die beiden Nasen (24) der vorderen Motorabdeckung (N) in die quadratischen Löcher, und befestigen Sie die Abdeckung mit der M4 x 10 TP Schraube (K).

**23.** Schliessen Sie das Signalkabel (25) des Multi-Job-Fachs (A) an den Steckverbinder des Finishers an.

**24.** Stecken Sie das Netzkabel des Kopierers in eine Wandsteckdose, und schalten Sie den Kopierer am Hauptschalter an.

**25.** Machen Sie eine Testkopie, und prüfen Sie die einwandfreie Funktion des Multi-Job-Fachs (A).

**22.** Inserire i due piedini (24) del pannello anteriore del motore (N) nei fori rettangolari, quindi fissarli per mezzo della vite TP M4 x 10 (K).

**23.** Collegare il cavo del segnale (25) del vassoio multi-funzionale (A) al connettore della finitrice.

**24.** Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice in una presa a muro e accendere la fotocopiatrice utilizzando l'interruttore principale.

**25.** Eseguire una copia di prova e verificare che il vassoio multi-funzionale (A) funzioni correttamente.

**22.** 将马达前盖板(N)的2处卡爪(24)插入角孔安装,用1颗M4×10TP螺钉(K)固定。

**23.** 将多重托盘(A)的信号线(25)连接到装订器的接头。

**24.** 将复印机主机的电源插头插入插座,打开主电源。

**25.** 进行试印,确认多重托盘(A)是否正常工作。

**22.** モーター前カバー(N)のツメ(24)2カ所を角穴に挿入して取り付け、M4×10TPビス(K)1本で固定する。

**23.** マルチジョブトレイ(A)の信号線(25)をフィニッシャーのコネクタに接続する。

**24.** 複写機本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチをONにする。

**25.** テストコピーを行い、マルチジョブトレイ(A)が正常に動作することを確認する。

**English****NOTICE**

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-650(B)

---

**Français****AVIS**

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-650(B)

---

**Español****AVISO**

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-650(B)

---

**Deutsch****HINWEIS**

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-650(B)

---

**Italiano****NOTIFICA**

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-650(B)

---

**简体中文****注意**

本产品（附属部件）适用于以下复印机。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

式样：DF-650(B)

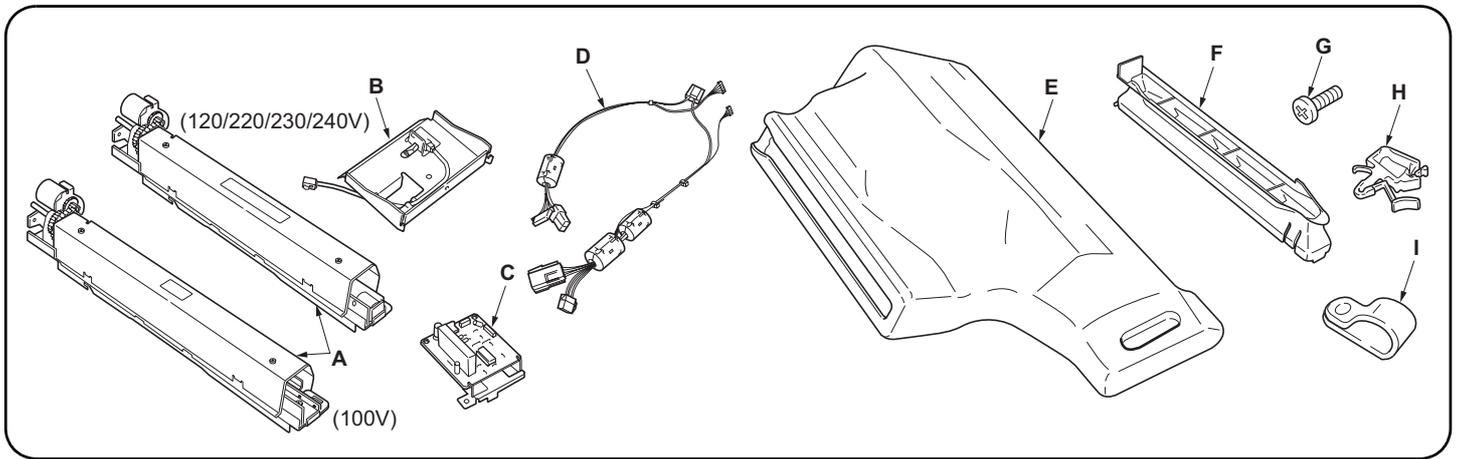
---

**日本語****注意**

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。  
設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

Model: DF-650(B)

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PUNCH UNIT**



### English

#### Supplied parts

A Punch unit.....	1
B Tank holder.....	1
C Punch PCB.....	1
D Power cord.....	1

E Punch waste box.....	1
F Guide.....	1
G M4 x 10 tap Tight S screws.....	3
H Wire saddles.....	2
I Clamp.....	1

#### Precautions

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

### Français

#### Pièces fournies

A Unité de perforation.....	1
B Support de réservoir.....	1
C Carte de perforation.....	1
D Cordon d'alimentation.....	1

E Boîtier pour déchets de perforation.....	1
F Guide.....	1
G Vis S taraudées M4 x 10.....	3
H Serre-câble.....	2
I Collier.....	1

#### Précautions

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

### Español

#### Partes suministradas

A Perforadora.....	1
B Soporte del depósito.....	1
C PCB de perforación.....	1
D Cable de alimentación.....	1

E Caja de desecho de perforación.....	1
F Guía.....	1
G Tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 S.....	3
H Placas del cable.....	2
I Abrazadera.....	1

#### Precauciones

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

### Deutsch

#### Gelieferte Teile

A Lochereinheit.....	1
B Tankhalter.....	1
C Locherplatine.....	1
D Netzkabel.....	1

E Locherabfallbehälter.....	1
F Führung.....	1
G M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben.....	3
H Kabelhalter.....	2
I Klammer.....	1

#### Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

### Italiano

#### Parti fornite

A Unità di perforazione.....	1
B Sostegno serbatoio.....	1
C Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione.....	1
D Cavo di alimentazione.....	1

E Scarto perforazione.....	1
F Guida.....	1
G Viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10.....	3
H Slitte del filo.....	2
I Morsetto.....	1

#### Precauzioni

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

### 简体中文

#### 附属品

A 打孔装置.....	1
B 纸屑盒支架.....	1
C 打孔装置电路板.....	1
D 电源线.....	1

E 打孔纸屑盒.....	1
F 导向板.....	1
G M4 x 10 右旋 S 紧固自攻螺钉.....	3
H 束线夹.....	2
I 卡箍.....	1
J M4 x 8 右旋 S 紧固自攻螺钉.....	1

#### 注意事项

如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

### 日本語

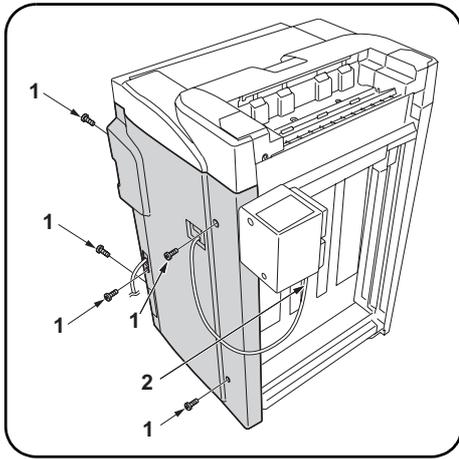
#### 同梱品

A パンチユニット.....	1
B タンク受板.....	1
C パンチ基板.....	1
D 電線.....	1

E パンチズボックス.....	1
F ガイド.....	1
G ビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S.....	3
H ワイヤースドル.....	2
I クランプ.....	1

#### 注意事項

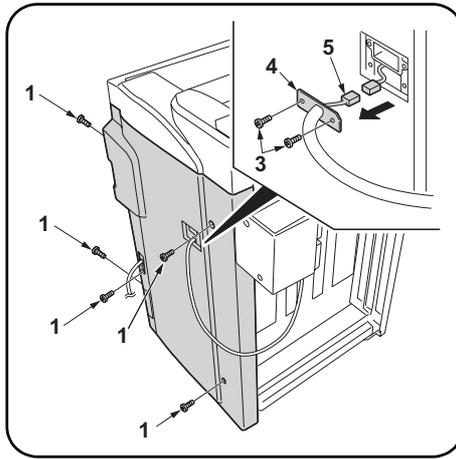
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



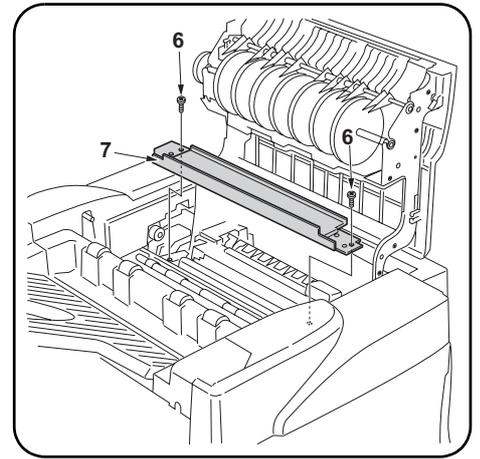
### Installation Procedure

Before installing the punch unit, make sure the copier's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

1. Remove the five screws (1) and disconnect the connector (2) to remove the back cover. (DF-650)



2. Remove two screws (3) and remove the plate (4). Unplug the signal cable connector (5). Remove five screws (1) and remove the rear cover. (DF-650(B))



3. Open the upper cover.
4. Remove the two screws (6) to remove the guide plate (7).

### Procédure d'installation

Avant d'installer l'unité de perforation, veiller à mettre le copieur hors tension et à débrancher le cordon d'alimentation de la prise.

1. Retirer les cinq vis (1) et déconnecter le connecteur (2) pour retirer le couvercle arrière. (DF-650)

2. Déposer les deux vis (3) et la plaque (4). Débrancher le connecteur du câble d'interconnexion (5). Déposer les cinq vis (1) et le couvercle arrière. (DF-650(B))

3. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur.
4. Retirer les deux vis (6) bloquant la plaque de guidage (7), puis retirer cette dernière.

### Procedimiento de instalación

Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el principal interruptor de alimentación de la máquina esté desconectado y de que el cable de alimentación no esté enchufado en el receptáculo de la pared.

1. Quite los cinco tornillos (1) y desconecte el conector (2) para extraer la cubierta posterior. (DF-650)

2. Quite los dos tornillos (3) y desmonte la placa (4). Desenchufe el conector del cable de señal (5). Quite los cinco tornillos (1) y desmonte la cubierta trasera. (DF-650(B))

3. Abra la cubierta superior.
4. Quite los dos tornillos (6) y desmonte la placa guía (7).

### Installationsablauf

Bevor Sie mit der Installation der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

1. Entfernen Sie die fünf Schrauben (1) und ziehen Sie den Stecker (2) heraus, um die hintere Abdeckung zu entfernen. (DF-650)

2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (3) und nehmen Sie die Platte (4) heraus. Ziehen Sie den Signalkabelstecker (5) ab. Entfernen Sie die fünf Schrauben (1) und nehmen Sie die hintere Abdeckung heraus. (DF-650(B))

3. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung.
4. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (6) und nehmen Sie die Führungsplatte (7) heraus.

### Procedura di installazione

Prima di installare un'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.

1. Rimuovere le cinque viti (1) e scollegare il connettore (2) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore. (DF-650)

2. Rimuovere le due viti (3) e togliere la piastrina (4). Scollegare il connettore (5) del cavo del segnale. Rimuovere le cinque viti (1) e quindi rimuovere il pannello posteriore. (DF-650(B))

3. Aprire il pannello superiore.
4. Togliere le due viti (6) per rimuovere la piastra guida (7).

### [ 安装步骤 ]

安装打孔装置之前, 请务必先关闭主机的主电源, 并将电源线从电源插座中拔出。

1. 卸下 5 个螺钉 (1), 断开接口 (2), 以便卸下后盖板。

2. 取下 2 个螺钉 (3) 和板 (4)。拔下信号线接插件 (5)。取下 5 个螺钉 (1) 和后盖板。(DF-650(B))

3. 打开上盖板。
4. 卸下 2 个螺钉 (6) 以便卸下导向板 (7)。

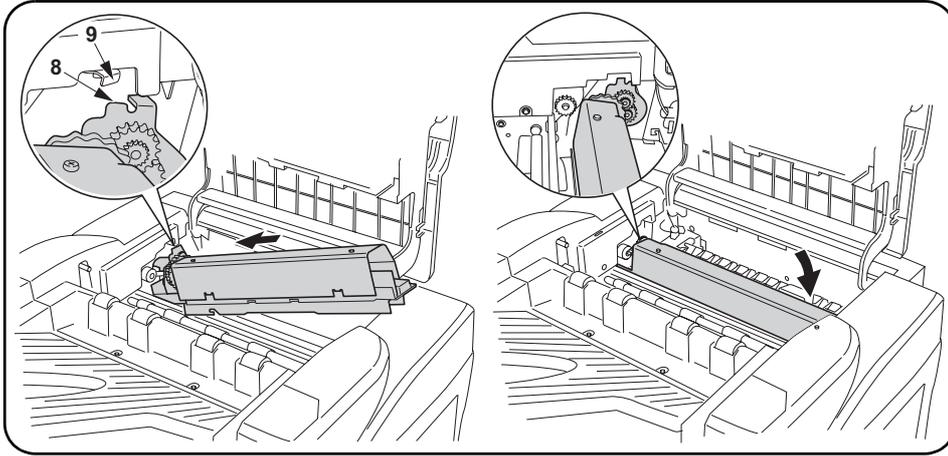
### [ 取付手順 ]

パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず複写機本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

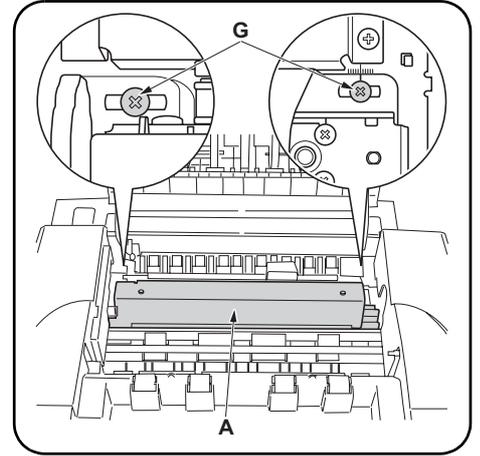
1. ビス (1) 5 本とコネクタ (2) を外し、後カバーを取り外す。(DF-650)

2. ビス (3) 2 本を外し、プレート (4) を取り外す。信号線のコネクタ (5) を取り外す。ビス (1) 5 本を外し、後カバーを取り外す。(DF-650(B))

3. 上カバーを開ける。
4. ビス (6) 2 本を外し、ガイド板 (7) を取り外す。



5. Making sure that part (8) of the punch unit is touched part (9) of the finisher, insert the punch unit as far as it will go between the rails that held the guide plate you removed in step 4.



6. Secure the punch unit (A) with two M4 x 10 Tap Tight S screws (G). Make sure the center of the right long hole is aligned with the center of the guideline.

5. En veillant à ce que la partie de l'unité de perforation (8) soit en contact avec la partie du retoucheur (9), insérer l'unité de perforation aussi loin que possible entre les rails supportant la plaque de guidage retirée à l'étape 4.

6. Fixer l'unité de perforation (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (G). S'assurer que le centre de l'orifice allongé droit est aligné sur le centre du guide.

5. Asegúrese de que la parte (8) de la perforadora está en contacto con la parte (9) del finalizador y, a continuación, inserte la perforadora todo lo que pueda entre los carriles que sujetan la placa guía que quitó en el paso 4.

6. Asegure la perforadora (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 S (G). Asegúrese de que el centro del hueco alargado derecho está alineado con el centro de la línea de guía.

5. Setzen Sie die Lochereinheit auf die Führungsschienen, die von der in Schritt 4 entfernten Führungsplatte gehalten wurden, schieben Sie die Lochereinheit so weit wie möglich ein und achten Sie dabei darauf, dass das Teil (8) der Lochereinheit das Teil (9) des Finishers berührt.

6. Sichern Sie die Lochereinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G). Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Mitte des rechten Langlochs auf die Mitte der Führungslinie ausgerichtet ist.

5. Assicurandosi che la parte (8) dell'unità di perforazione tocchi la parte (9) della finitrice, inserire l'unità di perforazione fino in fondo tra le guide che reggevano la piastra guida rimossa nel passo 4.

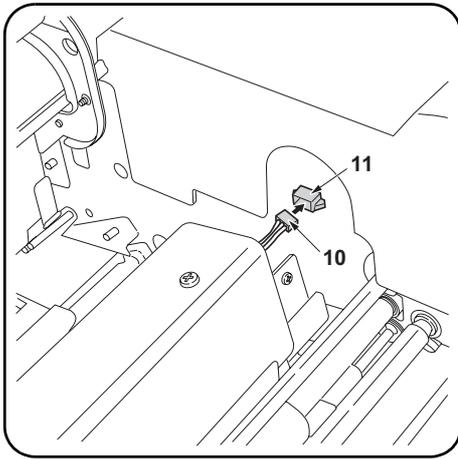
6. Fissare l'unità di perforazione (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (G). Assicurarsi che il centro del foro allungato destro sia allineato al centro dalla linea guida.

5. 请务必让打孔装置的部位(8)与装订器的部位(9)相互接触,将打孔装置插入到用来支撑在步骤4中卸下的导向板的轨道之间,直到插不动为止。

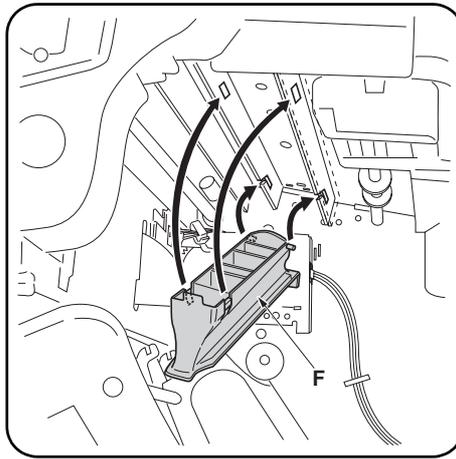
6. 用2个M4 x 10 右旋S紧固自攻螺钉(G)固定打孔装置(A)。并确保右侧长孔的中心对准标线中心。

5.パンチユニットの(8)をフィニッシャの(9)に当てながら、パンチユニットを奥に差し込み、手順4で外したガイド板の入っていたレールの中に入れる。

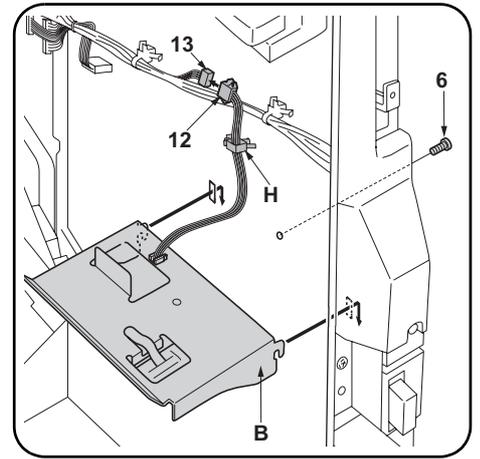
6.パンチユニット(A)をビスM4 x 10 タップタイトS (G)2本で取り付ける。右側の目盛りの中央に長穴の中心を合わせて取り付けること。



7. Connect the 3-pin connector of the solenoid (10) to the 3-pin connector (11) on the front of the finisher. (120V, 220V, 230V, and 240V models only.)
8. Close the top cover and open the front cover.



9. Slide the guide (F) along the rails on the bottom of the punch unit so it hooks on the tabs.
10. Pull out the finisher's middle tray.



11. Insert the assembly tank holder (B) into the holes side the side of the finisher and press it downwards to secure it. Next, secure it further with the screw (6) that was removed in step 4. Install the screw from the outside.
12. Connect the 3-pin connector (12) to the 3-pin connector (13) inside the finisher.
13. Anchor the wires to the frame with a wire saddle (H).

7. Connecter le connecteur 3 broches du solénoïde (10) au connecteur 3 broches (11) situé à l'avant du retoucheur. (modèles 120 V, 220 V, 230 V et 240 V uniquement).
8. Fermer le couvercle supérieur et ouvrir le couvercle avant.

9. Faire glisser le guide (F) le long des rails situés sur la partie inférieure de l'unité de perforation afin de l'enclencher sur les pattes de fixation.
10. Tirer le plateau central du retoucheur.

11. Insérer le support de réservoir (B) dans les orifices à l'intérieur de la paroi latérale du retoucheur et appuyer dessus pour le fixer correctement. Le fixer ensuite à l'aide de la vis (6) retirée à l'étape 4. Serrer la vis de l'extérieur.
12. Connecter le connecteur 3 broches (12) au connecteur 3 broches (13) à l'intérieur du retoucheur.
13. Attacher les câbles au châssis à l'aide d'une serre-câble (H).

7. Conecte el conector de 3 pernos del solenoide (10) al conector de 3 pernos (11) en parte frontal del finalizador. (Sólo para los modelos de 120 V, 220 V, 230 V y 240 V.)
8. Cierre la cubierta superior y abra la frontal.

9. Deslice la guía (F) por los carriles que hay en la parte inferior de la perforadora de forma que quede enganchada en las pestañas.
10. Extraiga la bandeja intermedia del finalizador.

11. Inserte el soporte del depósito (B) en los huecos del lateral del finalizador y empujelo hacia abajo para asegurarlo. A continuación, asegúrelo aún más con el tornillo (6) que quitó en el paso 4. Instale el tornillo desde el exterior.
12. Conecte el conector de 3 pernos (12) al conector de 3 pernos (13) que hay en el interior del finalizador.
13. Sujete los cables al marco con la placa del cable (H).

7. Stecken Sie den 3-poligen Stecker des Solenoids (10) in die 3-polige Buchse (11) an der Vorderseite des Finishers (nur bei 120 V-, 220 V-, 230 V- und 240 V-Modellen).
8. Schließen Sie die obere Abdeckung und öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung.

9. Schieben Sie die Führung (F) entlang der Führungsschienen an der Unterseite der Lochereinheit, sodass Sie in die Haken greift.
10. Ziehen Sie das Papierzwischenmagazin aus dem Finisher heraus.

11. Setzen Sie die Baugruppe der Tankhalterung (B) in die Löcher an der Finisherseite ein und drücken Sie die Baugruppe nach unten, um sie zu sichern. Befestigen Sie anschließend die Baugruppe mit der in Schritt 4 entfernten Schraube (6). Setzen Sie die Schraube von außen ein.
12. Stecken Sie den 3-poligen Stecker (12) in die 3-polige Buchse (13) im Finisher.
13. Befestigen Sie das Kabel mit Hilfe eines Kabelhalters (H) am Rahmen.

7. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini del solenoide (10) al connettore a 3 piedini (11) sulla parte anteriore della finitrice. (solo modelli 120 V, 220 V, 230 V e 240 V)
8. Chiudere il pannello superiore e aprire il pannello anteriore.

9. Far scorrere la guida (F) lungo le guide sul fondo dell'unità di perforazione in modo che si agganci alle linguette.
10. Estrarre il vassoio centrale della finitrice.

11. Inserire l'unità sostegno serbatoio (B) nei fori laterali della finitrice e fissarla premendo verso il basso. Quindi fissare ulteriormente con la vite (6) rimossa nel passo 4. Installare la vite dall'esterno.
12. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (12) al connettore a 3 piedini (13) all'interno della finitrice.
13. Fissare i fili alla struttura con una slitta del filo (H).

7. 将电磁铁的三针接口(10)连接到装订器前面的三针接口(11)。(仅限于120V、220V、230V和240V型)。
8. 关上顶盖板、打开前盖板。

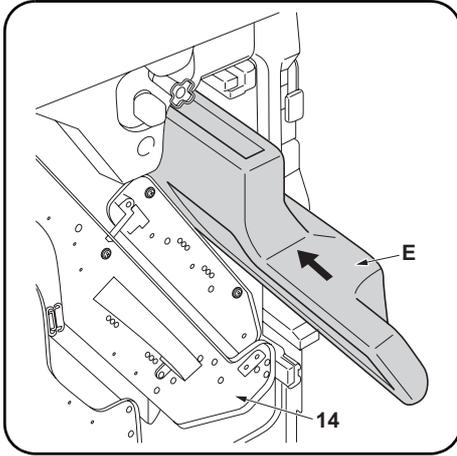
9. 将导向装置(F)沿着打孔装置底部的导轨装入,并使其挂在挂钩上。
10. 拉出装订器的中间纸盘。

11. 将纸屑盒支架(B)插入装订器内侧的孔内后向下按使之固定,用步骤4卸下的一颗螺钉(6)从外侧来固定。
12. 将三针接口(12)连接到装订器内部的三针接口(13)。
13. 用电线束线夹(H)将电线固定在机架上。

7. ソレノイドの3Pコネクタ(10)をフィニッシャ前側の3Pコネクタ(11)と接続する。(120/220/230/240V仕様のみ)
8. 上カバーを閉じ、前カバーを開く。

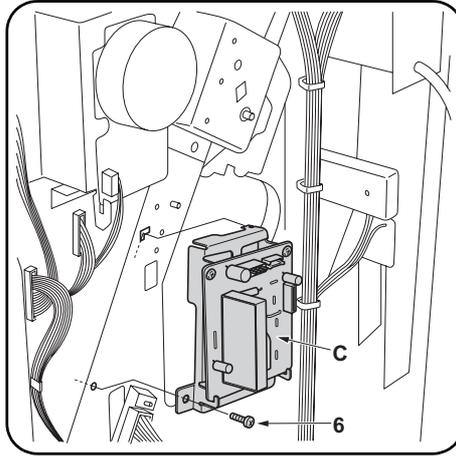
9. ガイド(F)をパンチユニット下部のレールに沿って入れ、ツメに引っかけて取り付ける。
10. フィニッシャの中間トレイを引き出す。

11. タンク受板(B)をフィニッシャ内側の穴に入れてから下方向に押しつけて固定し、手順4で外したビス(6)1本で外側から取り付ける。
12. 3Pコネクタ(12)とフィニッシャ内側の3Pコネクタ(13)を接続する。
13. ワイヤースドル(H)をフレームに取り付け、電線をワイヤースドルで留める。



**14.** Insert the middle tray (14) of the finisher to its original position. Install the punch waste box (E).

**15.** Close the front cover.



**16.** Fit in the tab of the punch PCB (C) to the hole on the back of the finisher, and secure it with the screw (6) that was removed in step 4.

**14.** Insérer le plateau central (14) du retoucheur dans sa position d'origine. Installer le boîtier pour déchets de perforation (E).

**15.** Fermer le couvercle avant.

**16.** Ajuster la patte de fixation de la carte de perforation (C) dans l'orifice situé à l'arrière du retoucheur et la fixer avec la vis (6) retirée à l'étape 4.

**14.** Inserte la bandeja intermedia (14) del finalizador en su posición original. Instale la caja de desecho de perforación (E).

**15.** Cierre la cubierta frontal.

**16.** Ajuste la pestaña del PCB de perforación (C) en el hueco de la parte posterior del finalizador, y asegúrelo con el tornillo (6) que quitó en el paso 4.

**14.** Setzen Sie das Papierzwischenmagazin (14) des Finishers in die ursprüngliche Position ein. Installieren Sie den Papierabfallbehälter (E).

**15.** Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung.

**16.** Setzen Sie den Vorsprung der Locherplatine (C) in die Aussparung an der Rückseite des Finishers ein und sichern Sie die Platine mit der in Schritt 4 entfernten Schraube (6).

**14.** Inserire il vassoio centrale (14) della finitrice nella sua posizione originaria. Installare lo scarto perforazione (E).

**15.** Chiudere il pannello anteriore.

**16.** Inserire la linguetta della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (C) nel foro sulla parte posteriore della finitrice e fissarla con la vite (6) rimossa nel passo 4.

**14.** 将装订器的中间纸盘 (14) 插入到原来的位置。安装打孔纸屑盒 (E)。

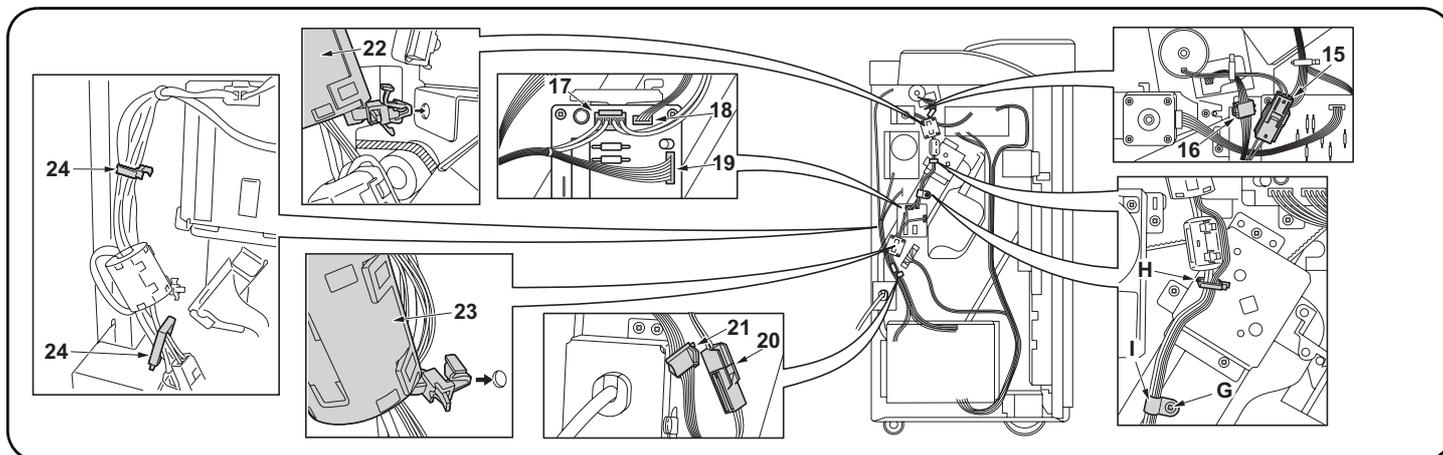
**15.** 关上前盖板。

**16.** 将打孔装置电路板 (C) 装入装订器后侧的孔内，用步骤 4 卸下的一颗螺钉 (6) 来固定。

**14.** フィニッシャの中間トレイ (14) を元通り挿入し、パンチクズボックス (E) を取り付け

**15.** 前カバーを閉じる。

**16.** パンチ基板 (C) をフィニッシャ後側の穴に入れ、手順 4 で外したビス (6) 1 本で取り付け



**17. Perform the following seven connections.**

Top: 2-pin power cord (D) and 2-pin motor connector (15); 6-pin power cord (D) and 6-pin sensor connector (16)  
 Center: 4-pin power cord (D) and YC1 (17) of punch PCB (C); 6-pin power cord (D) and YC3 (18) of punch PCB (C); 9-pin power cord (D) and YC2 (19) of punch PCB (C)  
 Bottom: 2-pin power cord (D) and 2-pin finisher power connector (20); 9-pin power cord (D) and 9-pin finisher power connector (21)

**18. Secure wires at one location with wire saddle (H).**

**19. Secure wires with clamp (I) and fix with screw (G).**  
**20. Fasten the snap-on band on core (22) to the hole on the finisher frame.**  
**21. Fasten the snap-on band on core (23) to the hole on the finisher frame.**  
**22. Fit the wires so that the power cord (D) runs through the two wire saddles (24).**  
**23. Reinstall the back cover.**  
**24. Plug the copier into a power outlet, and turn on its main switch.**

**17. Procéder aux sept connexions suivantes.**

En haut : cordon d'alimentation 2 broches (D) et connecteur du moteur 2 broches (15) ; cordon d'alimentation 6 broches (D) et connecteur du capteur 6 broches (16).  
 Au centre : cordon d'alimentation 4 broches (D) et connecteur YC1 (17) de la carte de perforation (C) ; cordon d'alimentation 6 broches (D) et connecteur YC3 (18) de la carte de perforation (C) ; cordon d'alimentation 9 broches (D) et connecteur YC2 (19) de la carte de perforation (C)  
 En bas : cordon d'alimentation 2 broches (D) et connecteur d'alimentation 2 broches du retoucheur (20) ; cordon d'alimentation 9 broches (D) et connecteur d'alimentation 9 broches du retoucheur (21).

**18. Fixer les câbles en un emplacement à l'aide du serre-câble (H).**

**19. Fixer les câbles à l'aide du collier (I) et de la vis (G).**  
**20. Introduire la pièce encliquetable du noyau (22) dans l'orifice du châssis du retoucheur.**  
**21. Introduire la pièce encliquetable du noyau (23) dans l'orifice du châssis du retoucheur.**  
**22. Monter les câbles de sorte que le cordon d'alimentation (D) passe dans les deux serre-câbles (24).**  
**23. Réinstaller le couvercle arrière.**  
**24. Brancher le copieur sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.**

**17. Realice las siete conexiones siguientes.**

Parte superior: Cable de alimentación de 2 pernos (D) y conector de motor de 2 pernos (15); cable de alimentación de 6 pernos (D) y conector de sensor de 6 pernos (16).  
 Parte central: Cable de alimentación de 4 pernos (D) e YC1 (17) del PCB (C) de perforación; cable de alimentación de 6 pernos (D) e YC3 (18) del PCB (C) de perforación; cable de alimentación de 9 pernos (D) e YC2 (19) del PCB (C) de perforación.  
 Parte inferior: Cable de alimentación de 2 pernos (D) y conector de alimentación del finalizador de 2 pernos (20); cable de alimentación de 9 pernos (D) y conector de alimentación del finalizador de 9 pernos (21).

**18. Sujete los cables en un sitio con una pinza de cable (H).**

**19. Sujete los cables con la abrazadera (I) y fíjelos con un tornillo (G).**  
**20. Coloque la banda de fácil sujeción de la zona central (22) en el hueco del marco del finalizador.**  
**21. Coloque la banda de fácil sujeción de la zona central (23) en el hueco del marco del finalizador.**  
**22. Coloque los cables de forma tal que el cable de alimentación (D) pase a través de las dos pinzas de cables (24).**  
**23. Reinstale la cubierta trasera.**  
**24. Conecte la copiadora a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.**

**17. Stellen Sie die folgenden sieben Steckverbindungen her:**

Oben: 2-poliger Netzkabel (D) und 2-poliger Motorstecker (15); 6-poliger Netzkabel (D) und 6-poliger Sensorstecker (16)  
 Mitte: 4-poliger Netzkabel (D) und YC1 (17) der Locherplatte (C); 6-poliger Netzkabel (D) und YC3 (18) der Locherplatte (C); 9-poliger Netzkabel (D) und YC2 (19) der Locherplatte (C)  
 Unten: 2-poliger Netzkabel (D) und 2-poliger Finisher-Stromversorgungsstecker (20); 9-poliger Netzkabel (D) und 9-poliger Finisher-Stromversorgungsstecker (21)

**18. Befestigen Sie die Kabel mit Kabelhalter (H) an einer Position.**

**19. Bündeln Sie die Kabel mit Klammer (I) und befestigen Sie die Klammer mit Schraube (G).**  
**20. Bringen Sie die Halterung der Abdeckung (22) am Loch im Finisher-Rahmen an.**  
**21. Bringen Sie die Halterung der Abdeckung (23) am Loch im Finisher-Rahmen an.**  
**22. Bringen Sie die Leitungen so an, dass das Netzkabel (D) durch die zwei Kabelhalter (24) läuft.**  
**23. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung wieder an.**  
**24. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Kopierers in die Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.**

**17. Collegare i sette elementi seguenti.**

Parte superiore: cavo di alimentazione a 2 piedini (D) e connettore motore a 2 piedini (15); cavo di alimentazione a 6 piedini (D) e connettore sensore a 6 piedini (16)  
 Centro: cavo di alimentazione a 4 piedini (D) e YC1 (17) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (C); cavo di alimentazione a 6 piedini (D) e YC3 (18) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (C); cavo di alimentazione a 9 piedini (D) e YC2 (19) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (C)  
 Parte inferiore: cavo di alimentazione a 2 piedini (D) e connettore elettrico a 2 piedini della finitrice (20); Cavo di alimentazione a 9 piedini (D) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (21)

**18. Fissare i fili in un punto con le slitte del filo (H).**

**19. Fissare i fili con il morsetto (I) e con la vite (G).**  
**20. Collegare il nastro a scatto sull'anima (22) al foro sulla struttura della finitrice.**  
**21. Collegare il nastro a scatto sull'anima (23) al foro sulla struttura della finitrice.**  
**22. Fissare i fili in modo che il cavo di alimentazione (D) passi attraverso i due fermacavi (24).**  
**23. Installare nuovamente il pannello posteriore.**  
**24. Collegare la fotocopiatrice a una presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.**

**17. 将如下 7 个接口连接起来。**

上: 2 针电源线 (D) 和 2 针电机接口 (15); 6 针电源线 (D) 和 6 针传感器接口 (16)  
 中: 4 针电源线 (D) 和打孔装置电路板 (C) 的 YC1 (17); 6 针电源线 (D) 和打孔装置电路板 (C) 的 YC3 (18); 9 针电源线 (D) 和打孔装置电路板 (C) 的 YC2 (19)  
 下: 2 针电源线 (D) 和 2 针装订器电源接口 (20); 9 针电源线 (D) 和 9 针装订器电源接口 (21)

**18. 用电线束线夹 (H) 在一处固定电线。**

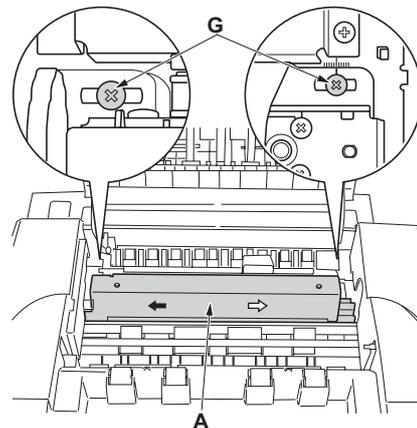
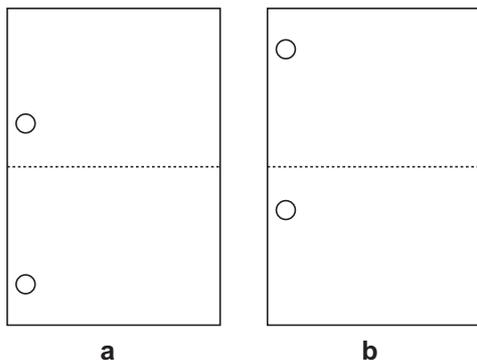
**19. 用卡箍 (I) 固定电线并用螺钉 (G) 固定。**  
**20. 将芯部 (22) 的搭扣带紧固在装订装置框架的孔上。**  
**21. 将芯部 (23) 的搭扣带紧固在装订装置框架的孔上。**  
**22. 布线时将电源线 (D) 穿过 2 个束线夹 (24)。**  
**23. 重新装上后盖板。**  
**24. 将主机电源线插入电源插座, 打开主电源。**

**17. 次の 7 カ所を接続する。**

(上部) 電線 (D) の 2P コネクタとモータの 2P コネクタ (15)、電線 (D) の 6P コネクタとセンサの 6P コネクタ (16)  
 (中部) 電線 (D) の 4P コネクタとパンチ基板 (C) の YC1 (17)、電線 (D) の 6P コネクタとパンチ基板 (C) の YC3 (18)、電線 (D) の 9P コネクタとパンチ基板 (C) の YC2 (19)  
 (下部) 電線 (D) の 2P コネクタとフィニッシャ電線の 2P コネクタ (20)、パンチ (D) の 9P コネクタとフィニッシャ電線の 9P コネクタ (21)

**18. ワイヤースドル (H) 1 カ所を追加し、電線を留める。**

**19. クランプ (I) を電線に取り付け、ビス (G) で固定する。**  
**20. フェライトコア (22) に付いているスナップ付きバンドを側板に固定する。**  
**21. フェライトコア (23) に付いているスナップ付きバンドを側板に固定する。**  
**22. 2 カ所のワイヤースドル (24) に電線 (D) を通し配線処理をする。**  
**23. 後カバーを元通り取り付ける。**  
**24. 複写機本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。**



### Centering punch-holes

Confirm the center position of each drawer in the copier is correct. Perform the following steps to adjust the punch holes.

1. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
2. Check for any off-centering in the punch holes.
3. Open the upper cover.
4. Loosen two M4 × 10 Tap Tight S screws (G) of the punch unit (A).

5. Adjust the position of the punch unit A.

**When holes are punched too far forward (figure "a")**

Slide the punch unit A to the machine rear (←).

**When holes are punched too far backward (figure "b")**

Slide the punch unit A to the machine front (⇒).

6. Tighten two M4 × 10 Tap Tight S screws (G) of the punch unit (A).

### Centrer les perforations

Vérifier que chaque tiroir du copieur est parfaitement centré. Respecter la procédure suivante pour régler les perforations.

1. En mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test en définissant l'alimentation papier sur le plateau multifonction.
2. Vérifier qu'il n'existe pas de décalage dans les perforations.
3. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur.
4. Desserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) de l'unité de perforation (A).

5. Régler la position de l'unité de perforation A.

**Lorsque les perforations sont trop avancées (figure "a")**

Faire glisser l'unité de perforation A à l'arrière de la machine (←).

**Lorsque les perforations sont trop reculées (figure "b")**

Faire glisser l'unité de perforation A à l'avant de la machine (⇒).

6. Resserrer les deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) de l'unité de perforation (A).

### Centralización de los huecos de perforación

Confirme que la posición central de cada cajón de la copiadora es la correcta. Realice los siguientes pasos para ajustar los huecos de perforación.

1. En el modo de perforación, realice una copia de prueba alimentando el papel a través de la bandeja de desvío.
2. Compruebe la existencia de cualquier descentralización en los huecos de perforación.
3. Abra la cubierta superior.
4. Afloje dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 S (G) de la perforadora (A).

5. Ajuste la posición de la perforadora A.

**En el caso en que los huecos sean perforados demasiado hacia adelante (gráfico "a")**

Deslice la perforadora A hacia la parte posterior de la máquina (←).

**En el caso de que los huecos sean perforados demasiado hacia atrás (gráfico "b")**

Deslice la perforadora A hacia el frente de la máquina (⇒).

6. Apriete dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 S (G) de la perforadora (A).

### Stanzlöcher mittelzentrieren

Überprüfen Sie, ob die mittlere Position eines jeden Papiermagazins im Kopierer korrekt ist. Befolgen Sie die folgenden Schritte, um die Position der Stanzlöcher einzustellen.

1. Wählen Sie den Papiereinzug aus dem MP-Magazin und erstellen Sie eine Testkopie im Lochermodus.
2. Prüfen Sie die Löcher auf Mitterverschiebung.
3. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung.
4. Lösen Sie die beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) der Lochereinheit (A).

5. Stellen Sie die Position der Lochereinheit A ein.

**Wenn die Löcher zu weit nach vorn durchgestanzt werden (Abbildung "a")**

Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit A zur Geräterückseite (←).

**Wenn die Löcher zu weit nach hinten durchgestanzt werden (Abbildung "b")**

Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit A zur Gerätevorderseite (⇒).

6. Ziehen Sie die beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) der Lochereinheit (A) fest.

### Centratura dei fori di perforazione

Verificare che la posizione centrale di ciascun cassetto nella fotocopiatrice sia corretta. Eseguire i passi seguenti per regolare i fori di perforazione.

1. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
2. Verificare che i fori di perforazione siano correttamente centrati.
3. Sollevare il pannello superiore.
4. Allentare le due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) dell'unità di perforazione (A).

5. Regolare la posizione dell'unità di perforazione A.

**Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo avanti (figura "a")**

Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione A verso il retro della macchina (←).

**Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo indietro (figura "b")**

Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione A verso la parte anteriore della macchina (⇒).

6. Serrare le due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) dell'unità di perforazione (A).

### [ 调节打孔的中心位置 ]

在进行复印测试前，请确认复印机主机的各供纸盒的中心位置是否正确。

1. 在打孔模式，通过 MP 纸盘进纸执行复印测试。
2. 确认打孔中心位置的偏移。
3. 打开上盖板。
4. 松开打孔装置 (A) 上的 M4 × 10 右旋 S 紧固自攻螺钉 (G)。

5. 调节打孔装置 (A) 的位置。

在打孔向机器前侧偏移时 (图 a)，  
将打孔装置 (A) 向机器后侧移动 (←)。

在打孔向机器后侧偏移时 (图 b)，  
将打孔装置 (A) 向机器前侧移动 (⇒)。

6. 拧紧打孔装置 (A) 上的 M4 × 10 右旋 S 紧固自攻螺钉 (G)。

### [ パンチ穴のセンター位置調整 ]

テストコピーを行う前に、複写機本体の各給紙段のセンター位置が合っていることを確認すること。

1. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
2. パンチ穴のセンター位置のずれを確認する。
3. 上カバーを開く。
4. パンチユニット (A) のビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を緩める。

5. パンチユニット (A) の位置調整を行う。

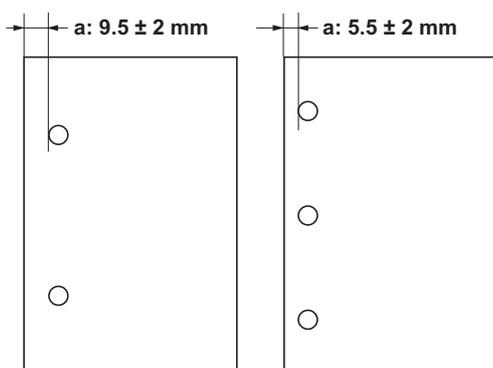
**パンチ穴が機械前側にずれている場合 (図の a)**

パンチユニット (A) を機械後側 (←) にずらす。

**パンチ穴が機械後側にずれている場合 (図の b)**

パンチユニット (A) を機械前側 (⇒) にずらす。

6. パンチユニット (A) のビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を締め付ける。



### Adjusting distance from leading edge to punch-holes

1. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.

2. Check that the distance "a" between the punch-holes and the paper leading edge is within the reference value.

Reference value "a"

Metric specification:  $9.5 \pm 2$  mm

Inch specification:  $5.5 \pm 2$  mm

### Définir la distance entre le bord d'entrée du papier et les perforations

1. En mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test en définissant l'alimentation papier sur le plateau multifonction.

2. Vérifier que la distance "a" entre les perforations et le bord d'entrée du papier est conforme à la valeur de référence.

Valeur de référence "a"

Spécification métrique:  $9,5 \pm 2$  mm

Spécification en pouces:  $5,5 \pm 2$  mm

### Configuración de la distancia desde el borde principal hasta los huecos de perforación

1. En el modo de perforación, realice una copia de prueba alimentando el papel a través de la bandeja de desvío.

2. Verifique que la distancia "a" entre los huecos de perforación y el borde principal del papel se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.

Valor de referencia "a"

Especificación métrica:  $9,5 \pm 2$  mm

Especificación en pulgadas:  $5,5 \pm 2$  mm

### Abstandeinstellung Führungskante zu Stanzlöchern

1. Wählen Sie den Papiereinzug aus dem MP-Magazin und erstellen Sie eine Testkopie im Lochermodus.

2. Prüfen Sie, daß der Abstand "a" zwischen den Stanzlöchern und der Führungskante des Papiers im Bezugswertbereich liegt.

Bezugswert "a"

Metrische Spezifikation:  $9,5 \pm 2$  mm

Zollspezifikation:  $5,5 \pm 2$  mm

### Impostazione della distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione

1. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.

2. Controllare che la distanza "a" tra i fori di perforazione e il bordo anteriore del foglio sia compresa nel valore di riferimento.

Valore di riferimento "a"

Specificazione in unità metrica:  $9,5 \pm 2$  mm

Specificazione in pollici:  $5,5 \pm 2$  mm

### [ 调节打孔的顶端位置 ]

1. 在打孔模式，通过 MP 纸盘进纸执行复印测试。

2. 确认打孔离纸张顶端的距离 a 是否在规定值内。

a 的规定值

公分规格:  $9.5 \pm 2$ mm

英寸规格:  $5.5 \pm 2$ mm

### [ パンチ穴の先端位置調整 ]

1. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。

2. パンチ穴の用紙先端からの位置 a が規定値であるか確認する。

a の規定値

センチ仕様:  $9.5 \pm 2$ mm

インチ仕様:  $5.5 \pm 2$ mm

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3. If punch hole position "a" is not within the reference value, enter maintenance mode U248 to perform the following adjustment procedure.</p> <p>4. Select PUNCH POSITION ADJUST mode.</p> | <p>5. Change the setting value.<br/>If "a" is shorter than the reference value, increase the setting value.<br/>If "a" is larger than the prescribed value, decrease the setting value.<br/>Setting range: -10 to +10 Initial setting: 0<br/>Changing the value by 1 moves the punching position by approximately 0.25 mm (for reference value).</p> <p>6. Exit the maintenance mode.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3. Si la position de perforation "a" se situe en dehors des valeurs de référence, entrer en mode de maintenance U248 pour exécuter la procédure de réglage suivante.</p> <p>4. Sélectionner le mode de PUNCH POSITION ADJUST (réglage de la position de perforation).</p> | <p>5. Modifier la valeur du paramètre.<br/>Si "a" est inférieur à la valeur de référence, augmenter la valeur définie.<br/>Si "a" est supérieur à la valeur recommandée, réduire la valeur définie.<br/>Intervalle des valeurs: de -10 à +10 Valeur initiale: 0<br/>En modifiant la valeur d'une unité, la position de perforation se déplace de 0,25 mm environ (valeur de référence).</p> <p>6. Quitter le mode de maintenance.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3. Si la posición "a" del hueco de perforación no está dentro de los valores de referencia, active el modo de mantenimiento U248 para llevar a cabo el procedimiento de ajuste siguiente.</p> <p>4. Seleccione el modo de PUNCH POSITION ADJUST (AJUSTE DE LA POSICIÓN DE PERFORACIÓN).</p> | <p>5. Cambie la configuración del valor.<br/>Si "a" es más corto que el valor de referencia, aumente el valor de configuración.<br/>Si el valor de "a" es mayor que el valor de referencia, reduzca el valor de ajuste.<br/>Rango de configuración: -10 a +10 Configuración inicial: 0<br/>Al cambiar el valor en 1, la posición de perforación se traslada aproximadamente en 0,25 mm (valor de referencia).</p> <p>6. Salga del modo de mantenimiento.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3. Wenn sich die Stanzlochposition "a" nicht innerhalb des Bezugswertbereichs befindet, rufen Sie den Wartungsmodus U248 auf und nehmen Sie die folgenden Einstellungen vor.</p> <p>4. Wählen Sie den Modus PUNCH POSITION ADJUST (Einstellen der Stanzlochposition).</p> | <p>5. Ändern Sie den Einstellwert.<br/>Wenn "a" kürzer als der Bezugswert ist, erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.<br/>Wenn "a" größer als der Referenzwert ist, verkleinern Sie den Einstellwert.<br/>Einstellbereich: -10 to +10 Basiseinstellung: 0<br/>Das Verändern des Wertes um 1 versetzt die Stanzlochposition um ca. 0,25 mm (im Verhältnis zum Bezugswert).</p> <p>6. Beenden Sie den Wartungsmodus.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3. Se la posizione del foro di perforazione "a" non è compresa nel valore di riferimento, entrare in modalità di manutenzione U248 ed eseguire la seguente procedura di regolazione.</p> <p>4. Selezionare la modalità PUNCH POSITION ADJUST (regola posizione di cucitura).</p> | <p>5. Modifica del valore di impostazione.<br/>Nel caso in cui "a" sia minore del valore di riferimento, aumentare il valore di impostazione.<br/>Se "a" è maggiore del valore previsto, ridurre il valore di impostazione.<br/>Intervallo di impostazione: Da -10 a +10 Impostazione iniziale: 0<br/>La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di cucitura di circa 0,25 mm (per il valore di riferimento).</p> <p>6. Uscire dalla modalità di manutenzione.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- |                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3. 若打孔位置 a 不在规定值范围内, 请进入维修保养模式 U248 执行如下调节步骤。</p> <p>4. 选择打孔位置调节模式。</p> | <p>5. 改变设定值。<br/>在 a 短于规定值时, 提高设定值。<br/>在 a 长于规定值时, 降低设定值。<br/>设定范围: -10~+10<br/>初始设定值: 0<br/>设定值每变化1个单位的变化量: 约 0.25mm(参考值)。</p> <p>6. 退出维修保养模式。</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- |                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3. パンチ穴の位置 a が規定値でない場合はメンテナンスモード U248 をセットし、次の調整を行う。</p> <p>4. PUNCH POSITION ADJUST モードを選択する。</p> | <p>5. 設定値を変更する。<br/>a が規定値より短い場合、設定値を上げる。<br/>a が規定値より長い場合、設定値を下げる。<br/>設定範囲: -10 ~ +10 初期設定値: 0<br/>1ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.25mm(参考値)</p> <p>6. メンテナンスモードを解除する。</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**English****NOTICE**

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-650/650(B)

---

**Français****AVIS**

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-650/650(B)

---

**Español****AVISO**

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-650/650(B)

---

**Deutsch****HINWEIS**

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-650/650(B)

---

**Italiano****NOTIFICA**

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-650/650(B)

---

**简体中文****注意**

本产品（附属部件）适用于以下复印机。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

式样：DF-650/650(B)

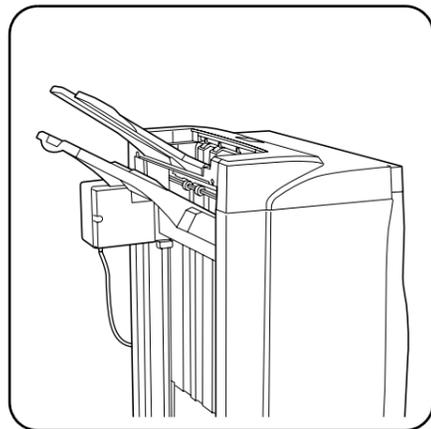
---

**日本語****注意**

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。  
設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

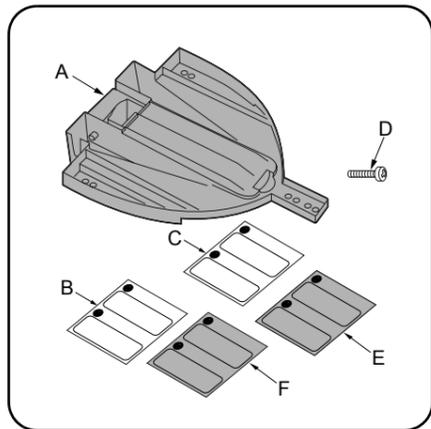
Model: DF-650/650(B)

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR STOPPER GUIDE**

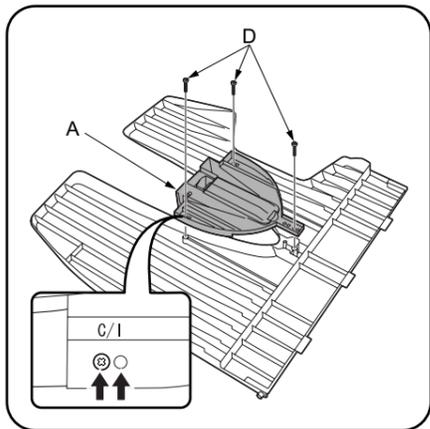


English

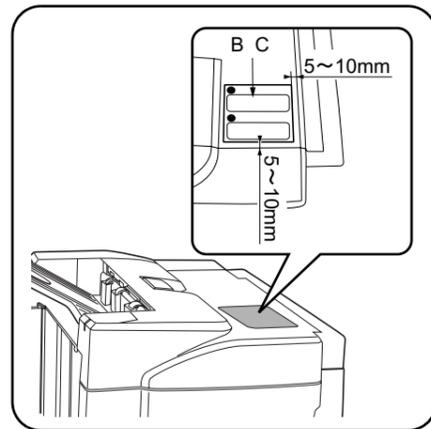
Installation Procedure for the Stopper Guide (to the finisher without the multi job tray)



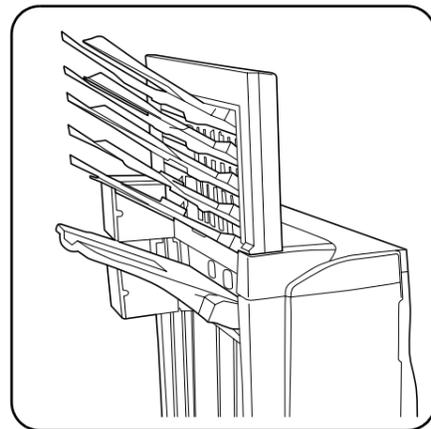
Supplied parts table with 6 items: A Stopper Ass'y, B Operation Label Inch, C Operation Label Metric, D M3 x 8 Tap Tight P screw, E Operation Label Inch, F Operation Label Metric.



1. Secure the stopper ass'y (A) to the finisher sub tray with three screws (D). Be careful. The installation position varies from the inch specification and metric specification. Make sure to adjust the position for the inch specification to the mark of (I) and the position for the metric specification to the mark of (C).

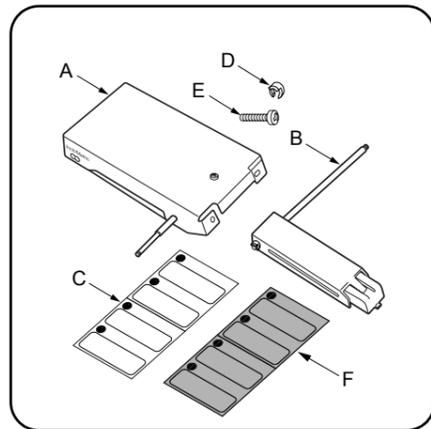


2. After cleaning with rubbing alcohol, affix the appropriate operation label (B),(C) or (E),(F) to the finisher as indicated.



English

Installation Procedure for the Stopper Guide (to the finisher with the multi job tray)



Supplied parts table with 6 items: A Stopper Mount, B Stopper, C Operation Label, D Stop Ring, E M4 x 8 Tap Tight S screw, F Operation Label.

Français

Procédure d'installation du guide de butée (sur le retoucheur sans plateau multitâches)

Pièces fournies table with 6 items: A Ensemble de butée, B Étiquette d'utilisation en système pouces, C Étiquette d'utilisation en système métrique, D Vis P de raccordement M3 x 8, E Étiquette d'utilisation en système pouces, F Étiquette d'utilisation en système métrique.

1. Fixez l'ensemble de butée (A) sur le plateau auxiliaire à l'aide de trois vis (D). Attention. La position d'installation est différente pour les spécifications en système pouces et les spécifications en système métrique. Veillez à ajuster la position pour les spécifications en système pouces sur la marque (I), et celle pour les spécifications en système métrique sur la marque (C).

2. Après avoir nettoyé en frottant avec un chiffon imbibé d'alcool, apposez l'étiquette d'utilisation appropriée (B),(C) ou (E),(F) sur le retoucheur, comme indiqué sur l'illustration.

Français

Procédure d'installation du guide de butée (sur le retoucheur avec plateau multitâches)

Pièces fournies table with 6 items: A Fixation de butée, B Butée, C Étiquette d'utilisation, D Bague d'arrêt 3, E Vis S de raccordement M4 x 8, F Étiquette d'utilisation.

Español

Procedimiento de instalación para la guía de tope (en el finalizador sin la bandeja multitrabajos)

Piezas suministradas table with 6 items: A Conjunto de tope, B Etiqueta de uso en pulgadas, C Etiqueta de uso en metros, D Tornillo de apriete P M3 x 8 Tap, E Etiqueta de uso en pulgadas, F Etiqueta de uso en metros.

1. Asegure el conjunto de tope (A) en la bandeja secundaria del finalizador con los tornillos (D). Tenga cuidado. La posición de instalación cambia según que las especificaciones sean de pulgadas o metros. Asegúrese de ajustar la posición para la especificación de pulgadas a la marca (I) y la posición de las especificaciones métricas a la marca (C).

2. Después de limpiar con alcohol, fije la etiqueta de uso adecuada (B),(C) o (E),(F) en el finalizador según se indica.

Español

Procedimiento de instalación para la guía de tope (en el finalizador con la bandeja multitrabajos)

Piezas suministradas table with 6 items: A Montura de tope, B Tope, C Etiqueta de uso, D Anillo de tope 3, E Tornillo de apriete S M4 x 8 Tap, F Etiqueta de uso.

Deutsch

Installationsverfahren für Anschlagführung (an Fixierer ohne Multi-Job-Fach)

Gelieferte Teile table with 6 items: A Anschlageneinheit, B Betriebsaufkleber Zoll, C Betriebsaufkleber Metrisch, D M3 x 8 Taptight-P-Schraube, E Betriebsaufkleber Zoll, F Betriebsaufkleber Metrisch.

1. Die Anschlageneinheit (A) mit drei Schrauben (D) am Hilfsfach des Fixierers befestigen. Achtung. Die Installationsposition ist für Zollspezifikation und metrische Spezifikation unterschiedlich. Die Position für die Zollspezifikation auf die Markierung (I), und die Position für die metrische Spezifikation auf die Markierung (C) einstellen.

2. Nach der Reinigung mit Spiritus den entsprechenden Betriebsaufkleber (B),(C) oder (E),(F) am Fixierer anbringen, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.

Deutsch

Installationsverfahren für Anschlagführung (an Fixierer mit Multi-Job-Fach)

Gelieferte Teile table with 6 items: A Anschlaghalterung, B Anschlag, C Betriebsaufkleber, D Anschlagring 3, E M4 x 8 Taptight-S-Schraube, F Betriebsaufkleber.

Italiano

Procedura di installazione della guida stopper (al finitore senza vassoio multi-funzionale)

Parti fornite table with 6 items: A Gruppo Stopper, B Etichetta di operazioni, pollici, C Etichetta di operazioni, centimetri, D Vite Tap Tight P M3 x 8, E Etichetta di operazioni, pollici, F Etichetta di operazioni, centimetri.

1. Fissare il gruppo stopper (A) al vassoio secondario del finitore usando tre viti (D). Stare attenti. La posizione dell'installazione è diversa per le specifiche in pollici e quelle in centimetri. Assicurarsi di regolare la posizione per le specifiche in pollici sul segno (I) e la posizione per le specifiche in centimetri sul segno (C).

2. Dopo avere pulito sfregando con alcol, fissare l'etichetta di operazioni appropriata (B),(C) o (E),(F) al finitore nel modo indicato.

Italiano

Procedura di installazione della guida stopper (al finitore con vassoio multi-funzionale)

Parti fornite table with 6 items: A Supporto dello stopper, B Stopper, C Etichetta di operazioni, D Anello di arresto 3, E Vite Tap Tight S M4 x 8, F Etichetta di operazioni.

简体中文

挡纸板安装手册 (未安装多功能托盘时)

附属品 table with 6 items: A 挡纸板组件, B 操作标签英制, C 操作标签公制, D 紧固螺丝 P M3 x 8, E 操作标签英制, F 操作标签公制.

1. 用 3 个螺钉 (D) 把挡纸板组件 (A) 固定在装订器辅助托盘上。请注意挡纸板组件有英制规格和公制规格, 两种规格的安装位置不同。英制规格对准标记 (I), 公制规格对准标准 (C)。

2. 用酒精清洁装订器本体的图示位置, 然后贴上符合规格的操作标签 (B), (C) 或操作标签 (E), (F)。

简体中文

挡纸板安装手册 (安装多功能托盘时)

附属品 table with 6 items: A 挡纸板安装板, B 挡纸板, C 操作标签 (DF-650), D 止动环 3, E 紧固螺丝 S M4 x 8, F 操作标签 (DF-650(B)).

日本語

ストップガイド取付手順書 (マルチジョブトレイを設置していない場合)

付属品 table with 6 items: A 組立ストップパ, B 操作ラベルインチ, C 操作ラベルセンチ, D ビス M3 x 8 タップタイト P, E 操作ラベルインチ, F 操作ラベルセンチ.

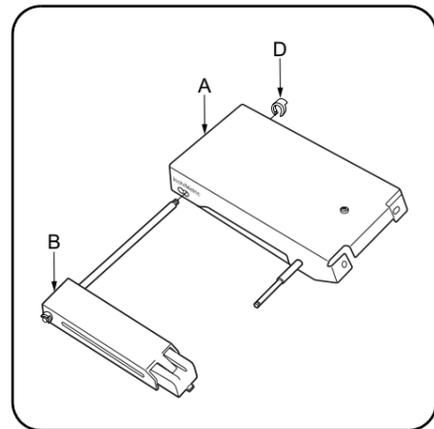
1. フィニッシャのサブトレイに組立ストップパ (A) をビス (D) 3 本で固定する。組立ストップパ (A) は、インチ仕様とセンチ仕様で取り付け位置が異なるので注意すること。インチ仕様は (I) の刻印に、センチ仕様は (C) の刻印に合わせる。

2. フィニッシャ本体の図の位置にアルコール清掃後、仕様にあった操作ラベル (B), (C) または (E), (F) を貼り付ける。

日本語

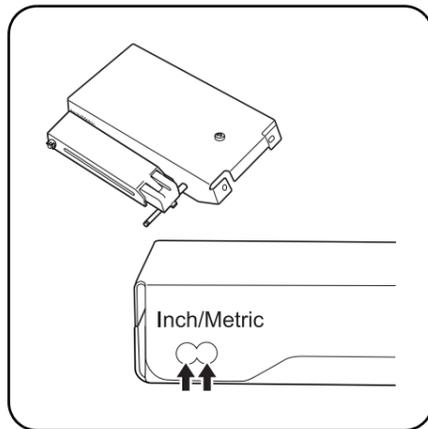
ストップガイド取付手順書 (マルチジョブトレイを設置している場合)

付属品 table with 6 items: A ストップ取付板, B ストップパ, C 操作ラベル (DF-650), D ストップリング 3, E ビス M4 x 8 タップタイト S, F 操作ラベル (DF-650(B)).

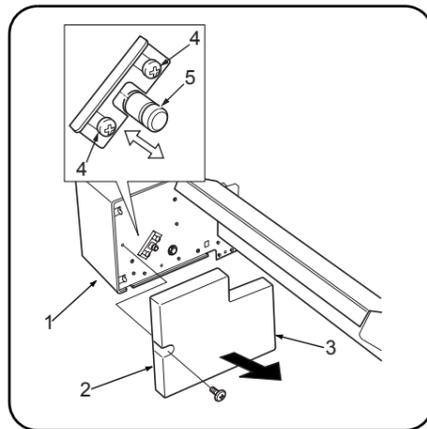


**English**

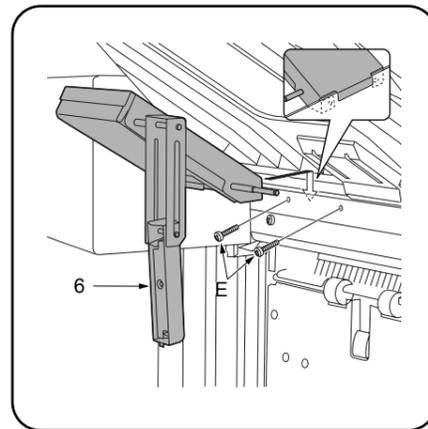
1. Install the stopper (B) to the stopper mount (A) using stop ring 3 (D).



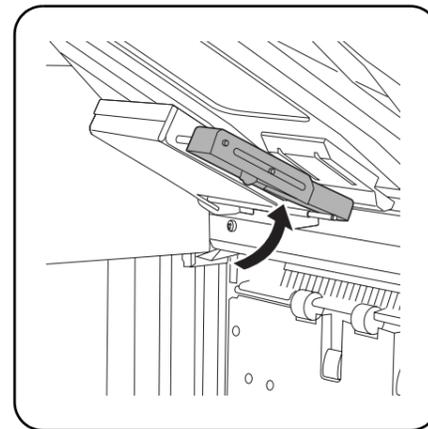
Be careful. The stopper (B) hole on the stopper mount (A) varies from the inch specification and metric specification.



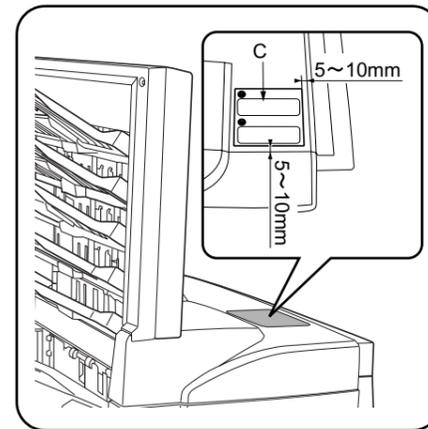
2. Remove the screw (3) from the motor front cover (2) attached to the assembly main unit (1), and remove the cover (2). Loosen the two screws (4) of the fixing plate, slide the fixing plate upward, push the gear shaft (5) into place while holding the bottom of the main unit (1), and then lower the main unit (1) by 50 - 70 mm.



3. Hook the guide assembled in step 1 to the finisher as indicated. Secure it with two screws (E). Make sure that the stopper guide (6) is dropped as indicated.



4. After installing the guide ass'y, hold the stopper guide as indicated.
5. Replace the cover removed in step 2.



6. After cleaning with rubbing alcohol, affix the appropriate operation label (C) or (F) to the finisher as indicated.

**Français**

1. Installez la butée (B) sur la fixation de butée (A) à l'aide de la bague d'arrêt 3 (D).

Attention. Le trou de la butée (B) sur la fixation de butée (A) est différent pour les spécifications en système pouces et les spécifications en système métrique.

2. Retirez la vis (3) du couvercle avant du moteur (2) fixée à l'unité principale d'assemblage (1) et retirez le couvercle (2). Desserrez les deux vis (4) de la plaque de fixation, faites-la glisser vers le haut, enfoncez l'arbre de transmission (5) à sa place tout en tenant la base de l'unité principale (1), puis abaissez l'unité principale (1) de 50 à 70 mm.

3. Accrochez le guide assemblé à l'étape 1 sur le retoucheur, comme indiqué sur l'illustration. Fixez-le avec deux vis (E). Vérifiez que le guide de butée (6) s'abaisse bien comme indiqué sur l'illustration.

4. Après avoir installé l'ensemble de guide, tenez le guide de butée comme indiqué sur l'illustration.
5. Remettez en place le couvercle que vous aviez retiré auparavant à l'étape 2.

6. Après avoir nettoyé en frottant avec un chiffon imbibé d'alcool, apposez l'étiquette d'utilisation appropriée (C) ou (F) sur le retoucheur, comme indiqué sur l'illustration.

**Español**

1. Instale el tope (B) en la montura de tope (A) utilizando el anillo de tope 3 (D).

Tenga cuidado. El orificio de tope (B) en la montura de tope (A) cambia para las especificaciones de pulgadas o metros.

2. Quite el tornillo (3) de la tapa frontal del motor (2) que está colocado en la unidad principal (1) y retire la tapa (2). Afloje los dos tornillos (4) de la placa de fijación, deslice la placa de fijación hacia arriba, presione el eje de engranajes (5) hasta su sitio mientras sujeta la parte inferior de la unidad principal (1) y después baje la unidad principal (1) en 50 - 70 mm.

3. Enganche la guía armada en el paso 1 en el finalizador tal como se indica. Asegure con dos tornillos (E). Asegúrese de que la guía de tope (6) baja según se indica.

4. Después de instalar el conjunto de guía, sujete la guía de tope según se indica.
5. Cambie la cubierta desmontada en el paso 2.

6. Después de limpiar frotando alcohol, fije la etiqueta de uso adecuada (C) o (F) en el finalizador según se indica.

**Deutsch**

1. Den Anschlag (B) mit dem Anschlagring 3 (D) an der Anschlaghalterung (A) befestigen.

Achtung. Das Loch für den Anschlag (B) an der Anschlaghalterung (A) ist für Zollspezifikation und metrische Spezifikation unterschiedlich.

2. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (3) von der vorderen Motorabdeckung (2), die am Hauptteil der Baugruppe (1) montiert ist, und entfernen Sie die Abdeckung (2). Lösen Sie die zwei Schrauben (4) der Halteplatte, schieben Sie die Halteplatte nach oben, drücken Sie den Getriebechaft (5) hinein, während Sie die Unterseite des Hauptgerätes (1) halten, und senken Sie dann das Hauptgerät (1) um 50 - 70 mm ab.

3. Die in Schritt 1 zusammengebaute Führung am Fixierer anbringen, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt. Mit zwei Schrauben (E) befestigen. Sicherstellen, dass die Anschlagführung (6) herunterhängt, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.

4. Nach der Installation der Führungseinheit die Anschlagführung so halten, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
5. Die in Schritt 2 entfernte Abdeckung wieder anbringen.

6. Nach der Reinigung mit Spiritus den entsprechenden Betriebsaufkleber (C) oder (F) am Fixierer anbringen, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.

**Italiano**

1. Installare lo stopper (B) sul supporto (A) dello stopper è diverso per le specifiche in pollici e quelle in centimetri.

Stare attenti. Il foro per lo stopper (B) sul supporto (A) dello stopper è diverso per le specifiche in pollici e quelle in centimetri.

2. Togliere la vite (3) dal pannello anteriore del motore (2) attaccato al gruppo unità principale (1), quindi rimuovere il pannello (2). Allentare le due viti (4) della piastra di fissaggio, trascinare la piastra di fissaggio verso l'alto, spingere in sede l'albero dell'ingranaggio (5) tenendo ferma la parte inferiore dell'unità principale (1), e poi abbassare l'unità principale (1) di 50 - 70 mm.

3. Agganciare il gruppo guida nel passo 1 al finitore come indicato. Fissarlo con 2 viti (E). Assicurarci che la guida dello stopper (6) sia abbassata nel modo indicato.

4. Dopo avere installato il gruppo guida, tenere la guida dello stopper nel modo indicato.
5. Rimettere a posto il coperchio rimosso nel passo 2.

6. Dopo avere pulito sfregando con alcol, fissare l'etichetta di operazioni appropriata (C) o (F) al finitore nel modo indicato.

**简体中文**

1. 将挡纸板 (B) 安装在挡纸板安装板 (A) 上, 并用 1 个止动环 3 (D) 固定。

挡纸板安装板 (A) 上的挡纸板 (B) 插入孔分英制和公制规格, 敬请注意。

2. 从安装在主单元组件 (1) 中的马达前盖板上取下 1 颗螺钉 (3), 并卸下该马达前盖板。拧松固定板的 2 颗螺钉 (4), 如上图所示的状态, 把固定板边支撑主单元组件 (1) 下部的同时, 边将齿轮轴 (5) 按下, 使主单元组件 (1) 下降 50 ~ 70mm。

3. 将在步骤 1 安装的挡纸板挂在装订器主机的图示位置, 用 2 颗螺钉 (E) 固定。如图所示, 使挡纸板组件 (6) 呈吊挂状态下进行安装。

4. 如图所示, 收起挡纸板组件。
5. 将在步骤 2 卸下的盖板按原样装上。

6. 用酒精清洁装订器本体的图示位置, 然后贴上符合规格的操作标签 (C) 或操作标签 (F)。

**日本語**

1. ストッパ取付板 (A) にストッパ (B) を取り付け、ストップリング 3 (D) 1 個を取り付ける。

ストッパ取付板 (A) には、インチ仕様とセンチ仕様でストッパ (B) を挿入する穴が異なるので注意すること。

2. 組立メインユニット (1) のモータ前カバー (2) をビス (3) 1 本を外して、取り外す。固定板のビス (4) 2 本を緩め、固定板を上側にスライドした状態で組立メインユニット (1) の下部を支えながらギヤ軸 (5) を押し込み、組立メインユニット (1) を 50 ~ 70mm 下げる。

3. 手順 1 で組み立てたガイドを、フィニッシャ本体の図の箇所に引っ掛け、ビス (E) 2 本で固定する。図のように、ストッパガイド (6) を下げた状態で取り付ける。

4. ストッパガイドを図のように収納する。
5. 手順 2 で外したカバーを元通り取り付け。

6. フィニッシャ本体の図の位置にアルコール清掃後、仕様にあった操作ラベル (C) または (F) を貼り付ける。

## **KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.**

Hoeksteen 40, 2132 MS Hoofddorp,  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31.20.654.0000  
Home page: <http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com>  
Email: [info@kyoceramita-europe.com](mailto:info@kyoceramita-europe.com)

**KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.**  
Beechavenue 25, 1119RA Schiphol-Rijk  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

**KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD**  
8 Beacontree Plaza  
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 OBS,  
U.K.  
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

**KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.**  
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N  
Milano, Italy  
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

**S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.**  
Hermesstraat 8A, 1930 Zaventem,  
Belgium  
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

**KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.**  
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin  
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,  
France  
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

**KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.**  
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,  
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),  
Spain  
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

**KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY**  
Kirvesmiehenkatu 4, 00880 Helsinki,  
Finland  
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

**KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)**  
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich  
Switzerland  
Phone: +41.1.908.4949

**KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH**  
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,  
Germany  
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

**KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA**  
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,  
1230 Wien,  
Austria  
Phone: +43.1.86338.210

**KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB**  
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,  
Sweden  
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

**KYOCERA MITA NORGE**  
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo  
Olaf Helsetsvai 6, NO 0694 Oslo,  
Norway  
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

**KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S**  
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,  
Denmark  
Phone: +45.5687.1100

**KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.**  
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,  
Portugal  
Phone: +351.21.842.9100

**KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.**  
527 Kyalami Boulevard,  
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,  
South Africa  
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

## **KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.**

**Headquarters:**  
225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,  
U.S.A.  
Phone: (973) 808-8444

**KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.**  
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,  
N.S.W. 2113 Australia  
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

**KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.**  
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany  
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,  
New Zealand  
Phone: (09) 415-4517

**KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.**  
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,  
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand  
Phone: (02) 586-0320

**KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.**  
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,  
Singapore 349572  
Phone: 67418733

**KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED**  
11/F., Mita Centre,  
552-566, Castle Peak Road,  
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,  
Hong Kong  
Phone: 24297422

**KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.**  
7F-1~2, No.41, Lane 221, Gangchi Rd.  
Neihu District, Taipei, Taiwan, 114. R.O.C.  
Phone: (02) 87511560

## **KYOCERA MITA Corporation**

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku  
Osaka 540-8585, Japan  
Phone: (06) 6764-3555  
<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

## KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

### **Headquarters:**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008  
TEL : (973) 808-8444  
FAX : (973) 882-6000

### **New York Branch:**

1410 Broadway 23rd floor  
New York, NY 10018  
TEL : (917) 286-5400  
FAX : (917) 286-5402

### **Northeastern Region:**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008  
TEL : (973) 808-8444  
FAX : (973) 882-4401

### **Midwestern Region:**

201 Hansen Court Suite 119  
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191  
TEL : (630) 238-9982  
FAX : (630) 238-9487

### **Western Region:**

14101 Alton Parkway,  
Irvine, California 92618-7006  
TEL : (949) 457-9000  
FAX : (949) 457-9119

### **Southeastern Region:**

1500 Oakbrook Drive,  
Norcross, Georgia 30093  
TEL : (770) 729-9786  
FAX : (770) 729-9873

### **Southwestern Region:**

2825 West Story Road,  
Irving, Texas 75038-5299  
TEL : (972) 550-8987  
FAX : (972) 252-9786

### **National Operation Center & National Training Center:**

2825 West Story Road,  
Irving, Texas 75038-5299  
TEL : (972) 659-0055  
FAX : (972) 570-5816

### **Latin America Division:**

8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,  
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166  
TEL : (305) 421-6640  
FAX : (305) 421-6666

## KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,  
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada  
TEL : (905) 670-4425  
FAX : (905) 670-8116

## KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407  
Col. Santa Inés,  
Azcapotzalco México,  
D.F. 02130, México  
TEL : (55) 5383-2741  
FAX : (55) 5383-7804

©2008 KYOCERA MITA Corporation

<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

 **KYOCERA** is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

Printed in U.S.A.